THE GATEWAY TO AMERICAN HISTORY

LAWLER

No. 22.19.163

THE TRUSTEES OF THE
PUBLIC LIBRARY
OMNIUM
LVX
CIVIVM
OF THE CITY OF
BOSTON
1852 1878

CAUTION

Do not write in this book or mark it with pen or pencil. Penalties are imposed by the Revised Laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, Chapter 208, Section 83.

MAR 2

MAY 12

OCT 10

FEB 1

JUL 14

APR 7

JAN 18

636916

NO 12 '48

DEC - 1 1949

B.P.L. FORM NO. 609: 3.24.26: 400M.

BOSTON PUBLIC LIBRARY

THE CRUSADERS BEFORE JERUSALEM

THE GATEWAY TO AMERICAN HISTORY

BY

THOMAS BONAVENTURE LAWLER

GINN AND COMPANY
BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON
ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1924, BY THOMAS BONAVENTURE LAWLER
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

624.9

April 3, 1925
B

PUBLIC LIBRARY

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

This "Gateway to American History" is written to meet the demand for a work which will give to the young pupil, before he begins the history of our country, some idea of the past ages of Europe, Asia, and Africa.

Children, no doubt, sometimes imagine Columbus as having awakened one morning with the belief that the world was round, and with his plans made for a voyage across the unknown Atlantic to the Indies and the Spice Islands. As a matter of fact, Columbus was the heir of long, long centuries of study by astronomers, geographers, and mariners, from the days of Egypt, Phœnicia, Greece, and Rome. It is to his undying fame that he was the first to test the ideas which had been handed down for so many centuries, and to bring these ideas to their realization.

In a somewhat similar way we are heirs of all that has gone before. To us have come down the religion of the Hebrews, the alphabet of the Phœnicians, the coinage of the Lydians, the calendar of the Babylonians, the philosophy of the Hindus, the art and ideas of beauty and democracy of the Greeks, the laws and system of colonial rule of the Romans. We have in our form of government some of the ideas of the ancient Britons and Teutons. We make use of the scientific discoveries of the Moorish Arabs in mathematics, of the Italians in painting and sculpture, of the Celts in poetry, art, and missionary zeal.

When we turn on an electric light, we pay tribute to the Franciscan monk Roger Bacon and to the English phy-

sician William Gilbert. When we look at a clock, we feel our debt to the Italian Galileo; when we study the heavenly bodies and their motion through boundless space, we think of Copernicus, the Polish scholar; and when we see an apple fall, we are perhaps reminded of Isaac Newton, who worked out the law of gravitation. In medicine we may be going back to the far distant days of Galen, and we trace the long line of patient workers to the modern days of Pasteur and Lister. When we are carried along the railroad, we cannot help thinking of James Watt and Stevenson. When on shipboard we see the quartermaster turning the wheel as he watches the compass, we are reminded of the Italians of Amalfi, who worked out this wonderful aid to navigation, or of the Chinese, who had the magnetized needle thousands of years ago.

The silk of our cloths takes us to far-distant China and the interesting story of the missionaries who first brought the eggs of the silkworm to Europe. For our early cotton fabrics we are indebted to India and its skillful weavers in delicate cotton and muslin goods. It is to the inventors like Hargreaves, with his flying shuttle, or Cartwright with his power loom, aided later by the great invention of the American Eli Whitney, that we turn for the story of the building up of the cotton industry and of some of the great manufacturing cities of the world. The spices on our tables lead our studies to Eastern lands, and we can with interest read of the ships of Magellan sailing ever west. One of the vessels of this expedition laden with its precious cargo of spices reached Spain again, proving beyond dispute the shape and size of the world.

Our windows recall the days of Tyre, on the east coast of the Mediterranean, where glass was first made. Bricks

remind us of the days of Babylon and Nineveh; and concrete may be seen in the great dome of the Pantheon, at Rome, built two thousand years ago. China was made in the East twenty centuries before the birth of Christ, and pottery was turned in the days of the Pharaohs of Egypt. On the banks of the Ganges the Hindus not only developed the religious systems of Buddhism and Brahmanism, which are the belief of half of mankind today, but they carved in wood or worked in enamel and pearl the marvelous designs that still cause wonder and admiration.

When we open a book, we think of the Egyptians making papyrus, the Babylonians fashioning clay tablets, the Phœnicians working out the alphabet, the Chinese, the Japanese, and the Moors of Spain producing wonderful paper, and Koster and Gutenberg bringing out the first printed books.

These are a few of the things for which we must thank those who have lived before us in the Old World, and whose history we should study if we would know how our present day has come to be what it is.

Beginning with the rise of historic civilization in the Nile Valley, the "Gateway to American History" shows us how the Egyptians lived, and what they built and thought. From Egypt we are led to Palestine, where the Hebrews built up their kingdom and taught the idea of one God, the Father of all. The Phœnicians give us the first picture in history of a great trading and colonizing nation, with their strong ships not only plowing the waters of the Mediterranean, but plunging boldly into the waves of the stormy Atlantic.

In Babylon and Nineveh we see the life of the people, and the manners and customs of the times. Later the

Persians appear, and the Greeks engaged with them in a struggle for life or death.

In Sparta we see militarism ruling the state; in Athens, the City of the Violet Crown, appear the spirit of democracy and the art that has been an inspiration to all succeeding ages. Rome rises and falls. We learn of the manly strength of the early Romans, of the heroism of the days of the Republic, and of the eras of Augustus, Constantine, and Justinian. The birth of the Savior, in Palestine, in the time of Augustus, lays the foundation of the story of the Christian church and its martyrs. The freedom of worship granted by Constantine ushers in a new day.

The great Arab invasion of Asia, Africa, and Europe reaches, in the eighth century, at Tours the high-water mark of its conquests, when it goes down to defeat under the blows of Charles Martel and his warrior Franks. We see the development of civilization in Ireland, and the labors of the Irish missionaries in England, Germany, France, and Italy. King Arthur, King Alfred, the Norsemen, and King John appear.

The crusaders march to the Holy Land, and chivalry and feudalism rise in western Europe. Marco Polo and his wonderful tales open to us the distant East. The Portuguese are exploring the west coast of Africa as they slowly make their way to India. Finally Columbus and his momentous journey lead to the discovery of the New World and the beginning of American history.

For valuable suggestions the author is indebted to many teachers who have examined the manuscript. He is under especial obligation to Dr. Francis Kingsley Ball, whose scholarly criticism has enriched every page of the work.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	America and the Old World	1
II.	The Egyptians	5
III.	The Egyptians (Continued)	11
IV.	The Hebrews	18
V.	The Jewish Kingdoms	22
VI.	The Phœnicians	26
VII.	The Babylonians and Assyrians	30
VIII.	The Persians	36
IX.	The Greeks	43
X.	The Religion of the Greeks	46
XI.	The Spartans	50
XII.	Life in Athens	53
XIII.	Art and Politics of the Greeks	63
XIV.	The Parthenon; Greek Drama	66
XV.	The Olympic Games	70
XVI.	The Age of Pericles	74
XVII.	Greek against Persian	78
XVIII.	The War with Persia	82
XIX.	Athens and Sparta	85
XX.	Philip and Alexander	88
XXI.	Alexander conquers Asia	91
XXII.	The Founding of Rome	97
XXIII.	The Rise of the Roman Republic	102
XXIV.	Rome conquers all Italy	105
XXV.	Rome against Carthage	109
XXVI.	Julius Cæsar	115
XXVII.	Cæsar in Gaul	119
XXVIII.	Cæsar the Ruler of the World	122

CHAPTER		PAGE
XXIX.	The Augustan Age	127
XXX.	The Forum	138
XXXI.	The Religion of the Romans	141
XXXII.	The Colosseum; Roman Aqueducts	142
XXXIII.	The Destruction of Pompeii; Change in Roman Life	146
XXXIV.	The Birth of Christ	150
XXXV.	The Persecution of the Christians	154
XXXVI.	Constantine the Great	158
XXXVII.	The Invasion of the Germans	163
XXXVIII.	The Coming of the Goths	168
XXXIX.	The Fall of Rome; Saint Augustine	171
XL.	The Huns and Vandals	176
XLI.	Theodoric and the Lombards	179
XLII.	The Rise of the Franks	183
XLIII.	Justinian the Great	186
XLIV.	The Era of Charlemagne	191
XLV.	Charlemagne crowned Emperor	197
XLVI.	The Angles and Saxons in Britain	199
XLVII.	The Holy Roman Empire	203
XLVIII.	The Rise of Feudalism	210
XLIX.	Life in Feudal Times	216
L.	King Arthur; Chivalry	223
LI.	Alfred the Great	229
LII.	The Northmen on the Continent of Europe	233
LIII.	The Magna Charta; England against France	239
LIV.	Ireland	243
LV.	The Schools and Missionaries of Ireland	246
LVI.	The Rise of Monasticism	251
LVII.	The Mohammedans	260
LVIII.	Mohammedan Culture	265
LVIX.	The Spread of the Mohammedan Power	267
LX.	The Crusades	272
LXI.	The Results of the Crusades	278

CHAPTER PAGE

LXII. The Rise of the Universities; the Hanseatic League 283
LXIII. The Gothic Architecture; Miracle Plays . 292
LXIV. The Renaissance 300
LXV. The Making of Books 308
LXVI. The Adventures of Marco Polo 313
LXVII. The Results of Marco Polo's Journeys . . 316
LXVIII. Prince Henry the Navigator; Columbus . . 322
LXIX. The Discovery of America 326
LXX. Spanish Exploration 329
LXXI. The Journey round the World 333
LXXII. Portuguese Exploration 335
LXXIII. De Soto and Coronado 339
LXXIV. French Exploration 342
LXXV. The Wars of Religion; the Armada . . . 346
LXXVI. English Colonization 349
LXXVII. The Downfall of France in America; the American Revolution 352

INDEX 357

THE GATEWAY TO AMERICAN HISTORY

CHAPTER I

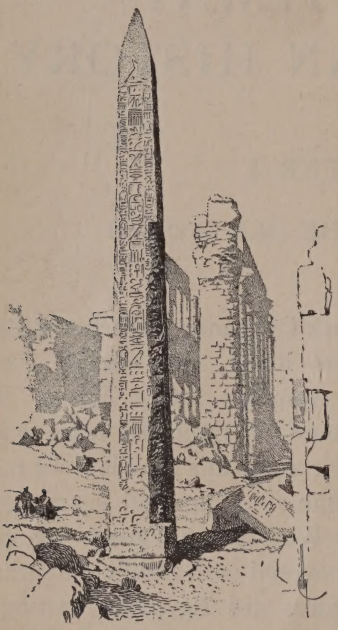
AMERICA AND THE OLD WORLD

The Obelisk in the Old World

In Central Park, in New York City, may be seen a stone shaft, or obelisk, seventy feet high. This obelisk was brought with great difficulty from far-distant Egypt. It was cut out of the solid rock about five thousand years ago. We can get some idea of how far away this time is if we recall that only a little more than four hundred years ago Columbus landed in the New World on his great voyage of discovery. The obelisk is covered with peculiar figures cut into its sides. These figures are Egyptian writing. They tell of the king in whose honor the obelisk was first raised, and something about his reign.

If the obelisk could speak, what an interesting story it could tell us, of the long years since it was first raised under the cloudless skies of Egypt, beside the quiet-flowing Nile! It could tell us of the cruel Pharaohs who ruled Egypt, and of the wonderful pyramids and temples they built. It could tell us of the splendid villas or homes, with high walls, which the nobles erected, and of the beautiful trees and flowering plants, the pools of clear water, and

the tapestries to ward off the sun when the master of the house went up on the roof to recline or sleep. It could tell us of the mud-brick houses of the poorer people, and of the slaves who did the work of the land, at times lashed with the whips of the cruel overseers.

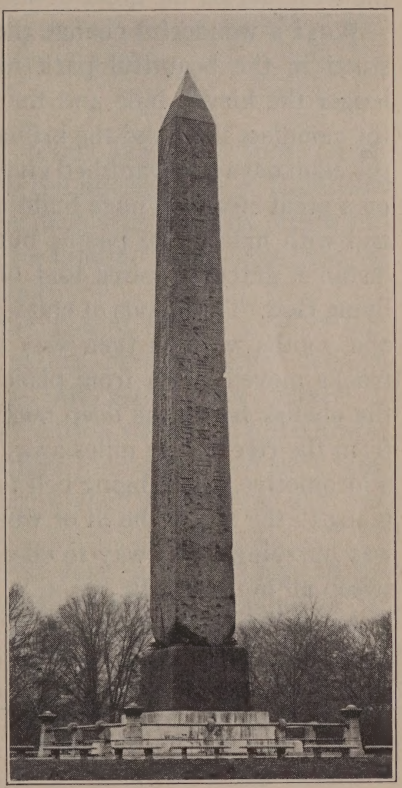


AN EGYPTIAN OBELISK

The obelisk watched the peasant driving his patient ox, as he turned up the ground with his crude wooden plow or threshed the wheat and flax. It heard the creak of the long wooden pole that raised the leather bucket full of water, which was poured into trenches to carry moisture to the growing grain.

The obelisk looked on the land when Joseph arrived, after he had been sold by his brothers, and it heard Moses pleading for his suffering people. It heard interesting stories of wonderful kings, who came with their armies from the valley of the Euphrates and conquered the land. It no doubt heard men praise the beautiful city of Athens, and Pericles, who adorned that city with the most wonderful buildings and statues the world has ever known. A little later it may have seen Alexander the Great, when he came to conquer the country. It may have heard men tell of a great city rising in Italy, on the seven hills that

border the yellow river Tiber, and it heard the tramp of the Roman armies and saw on their victorious march the haughty, heavily armed Roman soldiers. One great Roman leader, Julius Cæsar, stayed in Egypt for a time, and the obelisk may have seen him as he moved along the green banks of the Nile.



OBELISK OF THUTMOSE III, IN CENTRAL PARK, NEW YORK

It may have heard tales of beautiful cities that were being built in Europe, and perhaps stories of the wonderful crusaders who took up the sword to free the Holy Land from the rule of the Mohammedans, the Arabian followers of the prophet Mohammed who had already conquered northern Africa and a large part of Spain.

It is probable that stories came to the pyramid of a great ruler named Charlemagne, who had brought western Europe under his mighty scepter and had given peace and happiness to his people throughout his vast domains.

The Obelisk in the New World

Centuries rolled by, and one day men came to take the obelisk away from its ancient home to a new land far to the west, across the great ocean.

What a wonderful change the obelisk now beheld as it stood in the beautiful park in New York! It saw no longer the kindly Nile and the burning desert, no longer the cloudless skies and the brilliant starry nights, no longer the calm days of a vanished civilization. Instead, it looked on a great city with huge buildings towering on every side, and with millions of people hurrying to and fro. In the distance graceful spires told of churches erected to the living God. Thousands of children hastened to the schools, and youths were on their way to the universities. Great trucks moved goods from place to place. Now and then the obelisk heard the deep note of a steamship, sounding from the river a few miles away, or the distant screech of a locomotive. A clanging bell told that an ambulance was going to the aid of the ill or wounded, or that a fire truck was hurrying on its way to check the flames which would sweep all in their path.

Ancient Egypt and modern New York are separated by thousands of years and we may find it interesting to learn the story of some of these years as history tells it.

CHAPTER II

THE EGYPTIANS

The Gift of the Nile

The Bible tells us that Noah had three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Among the descendants of Ham were thought to be the Egyptians, who settled in the fertile valley of the Nile, more than six thousand years ago, and began to build up a great nation.

Egypt is often called the gift of the Nile. For four thousand miles, down a rather narrow valley between low ranges of mountains, this great river makes its way from lakes in central Africa to the Mediterranean Sea, and by its annual overflow prevents the country from becoming a burning desert under a cloudless sky and torrid sun.

The Nile begins to rise in June, and continues to rise until October, overflowing its banks to a distance of ten miles on each side, and carrying with it a rich soil which settles and fertilizes the land.

The ancient Egyptians wondered at the overflow, which they did not understand. Many thought it was sent by their great god Osiris; but we of today know that it is caused by the heavy rains which fall in the spring and summer at the headwaters of the river.

The Pharaoh

The ruler of Egypt was called the Pharaoh, a word which means Great House. In a somewhat similar way the

famous League of Iroquois Indians in central New York called themselves in their own language the Long House.

THE LAND OF EGYPT

The Sultan of Turkey was called for centuries the Sublime Porte, a term which came from the high gates of his palace. The Pharaoh, like all Oriental rulers, was a despot, which means one who can do as he pleases with

the lives and the property of his people. If he wished to put a man to death unjustly, he could do so, and no one could prevent him. He could also take away the goods and lands of anyone merely by giving the command. He often compelled men to work without pay on his pyramids, temples, and tombs.

It is difficult for us to imagine life under such a ruler. On election day we see the people go to the polls to vote, and on election night they gather to learn who received the largest number of votes and was elected. Under a despot or absolute ruler there is no voting, and the people have no voice in any of the affairs of government. Fortunately the despot and absolute monarch have disappeared from the nations of the earth.

Egyptian Kings

One of the most famous of the early rulers of Egypt was Menes, who is believed to have lived three thousand four hundred years before Christ. He united the people in one kingdom, and made Memphis, on the lower Nile, his capital. He was the first great hero in Egyptian history.

A few hundred years later a king named Cheops (or Khufu) built his great pyramid, which may be seen today near Cairo. About the year 1450 before Christ there was born the greatest warrior that ever ruled Egypt. He was Thutmose the Third, who has been called the Napoleon of Egypt. With his armies he spread the Egyptian Empire as far east as the Euphrates River. He used with great effect the horse and war chariot. With the wealth secured from his victories Thutmose built the great temples at Karnak, on the walls of which was inscribed the story of his victories. Its mighty columns are still standing.

Thirteen hundred years before Christ another powerful king, Ramses the Second, came to the throne, and ruled the country for sixty-seven years. Under him Egypt surpassed in splendor and power every other country in the world. His capital was Thebes, four hundred miles up the Nile. It was Ramses the Second who made life so hard for the Hebrews, as we read in the Bible.

The early Egyptians learned to use metals like gold, silver, copper, bronze, lead, and iron. They showed great skill in working in stone, clay, and glass, and in manufacturing from wood, leather, ivory, and cloth. They invented a system of writing. Taking a plant called the papyrus, which grows in large quantities in the valley of the Nile, they made from it a sort of paper. It is from the word "papyrus" that our word paper is derived. By mixing with water and gum the soot from their blackened pots they made ink.

Religion

The Egyptians worshiped not only gods, but such animals as the crocodile, ibis, cat, cow, hawk, and serpent. Anyone who killed a cat was put to death.

Their chief divinity was Ra, the sun god, who wears on his head the sun disk. At times he has the head of a hawk. Osiris was the god of the Nile, and was the bringer of all good things. His wife was Isis, the leading female divinity.

A sacred bull, called Apis, was worshiped as a god in the city of Memphis. Only a bull with certain special marks was believed to be Apis. He was cared for by the Egyptian priests, in a beautiful stable to which was attached a temple. Great mourning took place in Egypt

when Apis died; and when another bull was found, there was great rejoicing throughout the land.

The Egyptians held the sun to be a god, and considered the Pharaoh not only an earthly ruler, but a god. They believed that the soul lived after death, and for this reason they carefully preserved the bodies of the dead, that the souls might return. They believed that in the life after death a person would be rewarded for good deeds, and punished for bad.

Life of the Egyptians

The Egyptians built long, narrow ships, and learned how to sail them with great skill. Besides a large single sail, many of the Egyptians used rowers, having twenty men on each side. Three men stood in the stern to steer the vessel. They sailed up and down the Nile to trade with the villages along the banks. Their boats could often be seen along the northern coast of Africa, and they even crossed the Mediterranean Sea to Europe.

The tillers of the soil lived in low huts built of mud and straw. The roof was thatched. The floor was the bare ground. Their food was largely lentils, beans, coarse bread, and onions. Since the climate was warm and very dry, they needed very little clothing. In the pictures on the tombs we can see the people turning the soil with their crude wooden plows, sowing the seed, and gathering the harvest. They raised barley, wheat, peas, rice, oats, and beans. The wealthy people dressed in the richest garments, often made with gold threads woven through the cloth. Linen, however, was in general use for clothing. Royal persons had elaborate headdresses. The rich lived in beautiful houses, which were surrounded by gardens.

To the Egyptian the palm tree was the most wonderful tree in the world. From it came the dates that were used for food. Its leaves and fibers were used for baskets, and the wood of the tree was in use for many purposes, such as the building of houses and fences.

Canals were built from the Nile to carry water to the fields of grain, since rain seldom falls in Egypt. So large and valuable were their crops of wheat, rice, oats, and barley that Egypt was called the "granary of the ancient world."

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Locate on the map of Africa the Nile River.
2. Why is Egypt called the gift of the Nile?
3. What causes the flood of the Nile?
4. How did the Egyptian method of plowing differ from ours?
5. What was a despot?
6. Compare the life of the poor in Egypt with the life of the wealthy.
7. Tell why the palm tree was so valuable to the Egyptian.
8. What was the religion of the Egyptians?
9. How far to the east did Thutmose the Third extend his empire?
10. Where did the soil of Egypt come from?
11. What is the origin of the word "delta"?

CHAPTER III

THE EGYPTIANS (Continued)

Egyptian Sciences

Four thousand years before Christ, the Egyptians worked out the system of reckoning time which is called the calendar. It had twelve months, based on the appearance about every twenty-nine days of the new moon. Later their year was made up of three hundred and sixty-five days.

Most of the ancient peoples believed the earth was a flat circular plain. Around it flowed a swift river into which all the rivers of the world emptied. The sky was a bronze dome set with glass, resting on tall pillars which kept the earth and the heaven apart.

The flooding of the fields by the Nile made necessary every year a new marking of the boundaries of the fields, and this gave rise to the wide use of geometry, from a Greek word which means the measuring of land. The Egyptians used geometry also to measure the contents of their wheat warehouses, and to give direction to their pyramids and temples. The cloudless skies gave them a splendid opportunity to study the movements of the stars and planets. They laid the foundation of the science of astronomy.

Industries

Very early in their history, the Egyptians discovered the method of making delicate colored glass and fine linen cloth. They also made beautiful tiles for the walls

of their palaces. Egyptian cabinet workers made beautiful furniture of wood. They inlaid the wood with pearl, ivory, gold, and silver. Pottery was shaped by the potter's wheel, instead of by hand, as had been the method at first. The clay was hardened in closed furnaces. The flax raised in the fields was spun into fine linen. One of the uses of this fine linen was to wrap the bodies of the dead after they had been soaked for a long time in a salt solution and filled with spices which preserved them from decay. So carefully were all these things done that many of these bodies, called mummies, are in a good state of preservation today.

In our country everyone is free to choose his own trade or profession, but an Egyptian was compelled to follow the trade of his father. Slaves tilled the soil, and were of course the lowest class of the people. The wealthy Egyptians looked on them as mere beasts of burden, and their life was a hard and cruel one. Next in rank above the slaves were the free men, who carried on small business shops. Above the merchants in rank were the powerful landowners. High over all was the Pharaoh (or King).

Pyramids, Obelisks, and Tombs

The Egyptians became great builders. Since they believed in a life after death, in another world, they erected vast pyramids from stone, which they procured in the neighboring mountains. In these pyramids, the oldest existing work of man in the world, they placed the bodies of their rulers. These vast stone tombs were erected about three thousand years before Christ, and are among the wonders of the world. The huge limestone rocks were cut with copper tools. A special road had to be built to move them

from the quarry. It took ten years to build the road for the Great Pyramid. Many of the blocks weighed about two and a half tons. It is believed they were raised into place by building inclined ways which were constantly raised as the pyramid was built. The Great Pyramid alone has more than two million blocks of stone.

The sides of the pyramid are seven hundred and fifty-five feet in length. It is nearly five hundred feet high, about fifty feet less than the Washington Monument, and covers thirteen acres, a space as great as some city parks. A hundred thousand men toiled twenty years to construct it. They were frequently driven by lashes to carry on the work. Pyramids extend up the Nile for a distance of sixty miles. The Egyptians also built vast temples, such as we see today at Karnak and Luxor. The temple at Karnak, dedicated to the Sun God, had vast halls, chambers, and courts, all painted in glowing colors. The roof was held up by huge pillars, sixty-nine feet high, some of which are still standing. The Egyptians carved gigantic statues, such as the famous Sphinx, which had a human head and a lion's body. The Sphinx was believed to ask questions which were so difficult that no one could answer them. The Egyptians also erected obelisks, as the towering stone columns were called. These obelisks are covered with inscriptions.

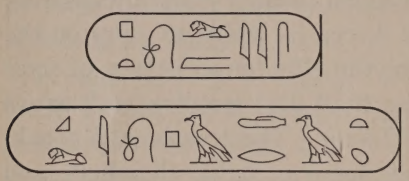
The Egyptians cut tombs in the rocks along the Nile, and here they buried many of the kings and nobles. They placed food and gifts of all kinds in the tombs for use by the souls of the dead. They sometimes put here also small statues of servants who would wait on them in the world beyond the grave. Some of these tombs exist to this day.

One of these tombs, that of Tutankhamen, after hav-

ing been sealed up for nearly three thousand three hundred years was discovered and opened in 1922. In it were found statues of the king, a royal throne of wood overlaid with gold, royal robes, couches, vases, footstools, candlesticks, gloves, chariots, funeral canopy, oars for the funeral barge, and provisions for the dead king in the spirit world.

Hieroglyphics

The early history of Egypt was not well known until one hundred years ago. On many of the Egyptian monuments were peculiar writings or pictures cut with copper or bronze tools in the stones. These pictures are called hieroglyphics, a word which means sacred writing. No one for thousands of years, however, could read these writings, or understand these pictures, until a French scholar, Champollion, set to work to decipher them.



THE NAMES OF PTOLEMY AND CLEOPATRA IN HIEROGLYPHICS

Champollion studied carefully the Egyptian characters on an obelisk or column which a Greek inscription said had been erected in honor of Ptolemy and Cleopatra, an ancient king and queen of Egypt. Champollion could, of course, easily read the Greek. He then sought the pictures that might possibly spell the words Ptolemy and Cleopatra. He found them at last, and with these as the key he finally worked out a large part of the alphabet. Champollion was also aided by the finding in 1799, by the soldiers of the great general of France, Napoleon, of a stone with three sets of writing. The stone was called the Rosetta Stone

THE EARLY ORIENTAL WORLD

because it was found at the town of Rosetta, in the delta of the Nile. One of the inscriptions on this stone was in Greek. This gave the clue to the Egyptian characters. The great secret of Egyptian history was at last discovered, and now scholars can read the history of early Egypt.

Before writing was invented, the story of events was handed down from one person to another by word of mouth. This is called tradition. It was a wonderful step forward when men began to write down the story of a people. Egyptian hieroglyphics were one of the first steps in recording events.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What can you tell about the calendar?

2. Compare the area of the Great Pyramid with one of your city parks.

3. How did the Egyptians preserve their dead?

4. Have you visited a museum where there are mummies?

5. Why was the art of writing one of the greatest inventions of mankind?

6. How was the method of reading Egyptian writing discovered?

7. Describe the travels of the Egyptians.

8. What does the word "geometry" mean?

9. Where is the Rosetta Stone now?

10. If you have a brother or sister in the high school, studying geometry, why should that book recall ancient Egypt?

11. Is there any connection between the Egyptians and the calendar which hangs on the wall of your school?

12. Have you seen any of the irrigation projects of the arid West of our country? With what ancient people is the history of this type of field cultivation connected?

13. Why were the pyramids built? What was the form of government under which such structures could be built?

14. What custom of the Egyptians is recalled in our word "embalming"?

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

3400 B.C. (about): Menes, earliest king of united Egypt.
2900 B.C. (about): The pyramid-builders.
1500 B.C. (about): Thutmose the Third, Napoleon of Egypt.
1300 B.C.: Ramses the Second.
332 B.C.: Alexander the Great conquers Egypt.
323 B.C.: Ptolemy, a general of Alexander, establishes his rule in Egypt.

AN EGYPTIAN PYRAMID

CHAPTER IV

THE HEBREWS

Abraham; Joseph

The early Hebrews were a nation of shepherds. They had descended from the patriarch Abraham, whose home was the city of Ur, in Babylonia, near the mouth of the Euphrates River. The Hebrews, as well as the Phœnicians, Babylonians, Assyrians, and Arabians, all of whom we shall meet later, were thought to be descendants of the second son of Noah, named Shem. They are therefore called Semites.

Coming in from the desert, where they had wandered to and fro seeking pastures for their flocks, the Hebrews finally settled in Canaan, a land east of the Mediterranean Sea. Here the twelve tribes of Israel lived for many years under Jacob, the grandson of Abraham, until a great famine arose. This leads us to the story of Joseph and his brethren, as told in Genesis, in the Bible. Jacob had many sons, but appeared to love Joseph more than he did the others, giving him better clothes to wear and less work to do.

The brothers became angry with Joseph, and planned to put him to death, but instead they sold him to some merchants who were on their way with their caravans to Egypt. They told their father that Joseph had been killed by wild beasts.

After some years of trouble and suffering in Egypt, Joseph was summoned one day by Pharaoh to tell him

what was the meaning of two dreams he had had; for Pharaoh had heard that Joseph could explain dreams. Pharaoh dreamed he saw seven fat cows come out of the river to feed on the bank. They were followed by seven lean cows, who ate them up. The next night he dreamed he saw seven full ears of corn grow on a stalk, and seven thin ears devour them.

Joseph told Pharaoh the meaning of the dreams. Seven years of great harvests would be followed by seven years of poor harvests and famine. He said the King should place great quantities of corn in the storehouses during the years of plenty, so that the people might have enough to eat during the seven years of poor harvests.

The King appointed Joseph in charge of the work.

When the famine came, it was felt severely in the land of Canaan. Jacob, hearing there was corn in the storehouses of Egypt, sent his sons to buy for his people. The sons were led to Joseph, who sat in his beautiful robes on his golden seat. Joseph at once knew them, but they did not recognize their long-lost brother, whom they had treated so cruelly years before. They were given corn, and at last Joseph told who he was, and sent for his father and relatives to come to Egypt. Land was given to them in Goshen, one of the most fertile regions in the delta of the Nile. There they and their descendants lived in peace and plenty for many years.

After the death of Joseph and of the Pharaoh who was his friend, the Egyptians began to treat the Hebrews with great cruelty. The Bible tells us that their life was made bitter with hard work in clay and brick and with all manner of service. They were practically reduced to the condition of slaves.

When the Hebrews complained of their treatment, the new Pharaoh ordered the male children of the Hebrews to be put to death as soon as they were born. He hoped in this way to prevent them from becoming too strong in numbers, lest they might rise against him.

Moses, Leader of his People

One Hebrew mother hid her new-born son in a basket on the banks of the Nile. Here the babe was found by Pharaoh's daughter, who named him Moses. She took him to her home and reared him.

Moses finally became a leader of his people. When he asked Pharaoh to allow the Hebrews to depart into the wilderness, Pharaoh refused. Then a series of plagues fell on Egypt. Finally, when the eldest son of every Egyptian family was killed by the destroying angel, Pharaoh in terror gave permission for the Hebrews to go out of Egypt with all their goods. With shouts of joy they started forth. The Bible says they crossed the Red Sea by a path made by Jehovah through the waters.

Pharaoh regretted that he had allowed them to go, and sent an army after them. The army followed the path the Hebrews had taken, but in the midst of their passage the waters returned to their bed, and the army was drowned.

The Hebrews hurried on into the wilderness. Here, on Mount Sinai, Moses received from the Lord the two stone tablets on which had been written the Ten Commandments.

Forty years these twelve tribes of Israel wandered in the deserts, living in tents, seeking pasture lands and wells of water for their herds and flocks. They lived on a food called manna, which fell from heaven and kept them from

starving. Wherever they went, they carried with them a movable temple called the Ark, the dwelling place of the God of Israel.

When they came in sight of the Promised Land, as Canaan was called, Moses died, and Joshua took command of the Israelites. He made plans to invade and capture the fertile land of Canaan. Leading the Hebrew army across the Jordan River, he attacked and carried by assault the city of Jericho. Other cities fell, with terrible loss of life and with great suffering of the unfortunate inhabitants, until Canaan was in the hands of the Hebrews. The Hebrews now began their life as a nation.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What method of life did the early Hebrews follow?

2. Tell the story of Joseph.

3. Read in Exodus the Bible story of their life in Egypt.

4. Who was the great lawgiver of the Hebrews?

5. The English language is read from left to right. How is the Hebrew language read?

6. Have you seen the famous picture called the "Frieze of the Prophets"?

7. To the Jewish people the word "prophet" meant one who spoke for Jehovah, or God, to the people. What do we generally mean by the word today?

8. There is in Rome a famous statue of Moses. Look up a picture of it and find who carved it. In this statue Moses holds two tablets. What is written on them rules our conduct today. What is this writing?

9. Find on the map Mount Sinai, the Jordan River, and Canaan.

CHAPTER V

THE JEWISH KINGDOMS

The Kings of Judah

About a thousand years before Christ the Israelites founded the Kingdom of Judah. Saul was their first king. He united the people and trained them in the arts of war and peace. The second king was the famous David. He had been a shepherd. On account of his musical voice and his skill on the harp he was called "the sweet singer of Israel." He was the poet of the Psalms.

While Saul was king, the Philistines, who lived to the west of Judah, on the shore of the Mediterranean, came to attack the Israelites. A leader of the Philistines, named Goliath, who was a giant in size, stepped forth and issued a challenge to anyone in the opposing army to fight with him. The youthful David boldly accepted the challenge. Armed only with a sling and a few round stones, he drew near. Goliath laughed at his young opponent; but suddenly David sent from his sling a stone which struck Goliath in the forehead. Goliath fell stunned, and David, seizing the giant's sword, cut off his head.

David married a daughter of King Saul. When he himself became king, he captured Jerusalem, and made it his capital. He built there a beautiful new palace, and extended his kingdom until it reached from the Red Sea to the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. He reigned for thirty-three years. He was succeeded (993 B.C.) by his son Solomon.

Solomon raised his kingdom to such power and wealth that a queen, visiting it, said it was far more beautiful than any description that could be given of it.

Solomon built the famous temple of Jerusalem. It required the work of eighty thousand men for more than seven years. From the Lebanon mountains great cedar logs were brought and placed on the carefully cut pedestals. The temple was adorned with gold and silver plates. Two massive pillars of brass formed the front porch. The ceiling was of gold and the floor of precious marble. In the inner courts were many altars, where offerings to the Lord were made. In the innermost court was the Holy of Holies, made of gold and precious stones. Here was hidden the sacred Ark of the Covenant. This contained the two tables of the Commandments, given to Moses on Mount Sinai, a pot of manna, and the rod of Aaron. Aaron, the brother of Moses, was the first High Priest of the Israelites. Only the High Priest could enter, once a year, the Holy of Holies. According to the Bible, the Lord commanded Aaron to cast down his rod before Pharaoh. At once the rod became a serpent. Pharaoh ordered his magicians to bring in their rods and cast them down. As they did so, their rods also became serpents, but Aaron's rod swallowed up the others.

Solomon married a princess of Egypt. He built magnificent palaces and ruled like the gorgeous kings of the East. This required so much money that he was compelled to lay heavy taxes on his people. This caused great distress throughout his kingdom. After his death, there was a revolt; the northern part of the old Hebrew kingdom, made up of ten tribes, cut itself off and formed the kingdom of Israel. Its capital was Samaria.

Fall of Jerusalem

This kingdom was prosperous for many years, but was finally destroyed by the Assyrians, in the year 722 before Christ, and the people were taken to Nineveh. The kingdom of Judah, made up of the remaining two tribes, had Jerusalem as its capital. It escaped at this time from capture by the Assyrians, but one hundred and thirty-six years later the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar, overran Judah and captured Jerusalem. He destroyed the city, even leveling the walls.

The Hebrews who survived the siege and destruction of Jerusalem were taken to the city of Babylon as captives. The Bible says they sat by the rivers of Babylon and wept when they remembered Jerusalem. When Cyrus the Great, king of the Persians, captured Babylon, with great kindness he allowed the Hebrew captives to return home and to rebuild their city and temple. They had been in captivity almost fifty years.

In Jerusalem, not far from the site of the ancient temple, is a spot called the Place of Wailing. Here the Jews still gather to lament the fall of their kingdom and to pray for its restoration.

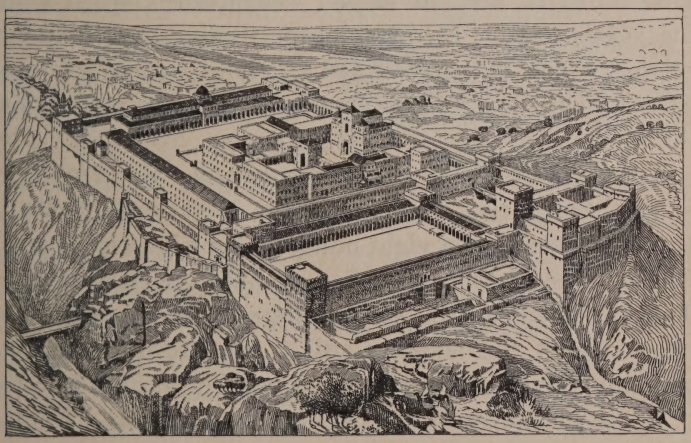
The early Hebrews received, as we have seen, the Ten Commandments. They had many noble prophets, who were teachers of morality, charity, and justice. Among the greatest were Elijah, Amos, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Micah, and Hosea. These prophets called upon the people to worship the one supreme God; for the Hebrews, unlike other Oriental peoples, believed in one God, the Father of all. The Old Testament, which is their sacred book, is part of the Bible. The great gift which the Hebrews gave to the world was religion.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Who was David? Read the Psalms of David in the Bible.
2. Find on the map the kingdom of Israel and of Judah.
3. What was the rod of Aaron?
4. What famous building did Solomon erect?
5. What was the fate of the Hebrew kingdoms?

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

1230 B.C. (about): Exodus from Egypt.
1050 B.C. (about): Age of the Judges.
1050 B.C.: Founding of the Hebrew monarchy.
1025–993 B.C.: Reign of David.
993–953 B.C.: Reign of Solomon.
953 B.C.: Division of the Kingdom.
953–722 B.C.: Kingdom of Israel.
953–586 B.C.: Kingdom of Judah.
722 B.C.: Israel taken by the Assyrians.
586 B.C.: Judah captured by the Chaldeans.
539 B.C.: Cyrus returns the Jewish captives from Babylon.



THE TEMPLE AT JERUSALEM

CHAPTER VI

THE PHŒNICIANS

Phœnician Colonies

Although, so far as known, the Egyptians sent forth the first ships, and although Cretan navigators, at an early date, were also very active in seafaring life, the Phœnicians became the most famous shipbuilders, sailors, and traders of the early world. Their leading cities were Sidon and Tyre, on the eastern shore of the Mediterranean Sea, where the people busied themselves in trade and commerce.

In building their ships the Phœnicians used the famous cedar, pine, and cypress which grew on the Lebanon mountains, east of them. These small ships were moved with sails and oars, and the daring Phœnicians cruised along the coasts of the Mediterranean, trading and founding colonies. The Phœnicians had no compass, but let doves loose, which flew straight homeward and thus pointed out the way for the pilot to keep his course.

The greatest of the Phœnician colonies was Carthage, in northern Africa, nearly opposite the island of Sicily. It was founded about eight hundred and fifty years before Christ. The Phœnicians sailed out into the Atlantic also. They founded, on the southwestern coast of Spain, the city of Gades, the modern Cadiz, a city which has kept its name and position longer than any other in western Europe.

These Phœnician trading vessels went westward loaded with ivory, spices, jewels, shawls, carpets, incense, and

sandalwood which were brought by caravans of camels from Damascus, Bagdad, Babylon, Nineveh, and the cities of India. On the return voyages the Phœnicians carried tin from Britain, gold and silver from Africa, iron, copper, and silver from Spain, and amber from the coasts of the Baltic. They also sailed to the northward and brought back from the countries around the Black Sea wool, grain, and furs.

PHŒNICIAN SHIP

The Alphabet

The Phœnicians worked out most of the alphabet which has come down to us. It had twenty-two letters. It was phonetic writing, instead of the picture writing used by the Egyptians. They worked with great skill in pottery, glass, bronze, and copper. They used the famous Tyrian purple as a dye, securing the dye from a snail which they found along their coast. They dealt extensively in slaves, whom they bought and sold in all parts of the Mediterranean world.

According to a famous Greek historian, named Herodotus, the Phœnicians were the first to sail round Africa. He says King Necho of Egypt, about six hundred and ten years before Christ, sent some Phœnicians with three ships on a voyage of discovery. They sailed down the

Red Sea and along the east coast of Africa. Landing, they planted corn and waited until the harvest time before they started again on their journey. Sailing always south, they came to the end of Africa, and saw the coast turning to the north. Following the coast northward, they

HOW THE ENGLISH ALPHABET GREW FROM THE PHŒNICIAN

returned through the Pillars of Hercules, as the Strait of Gibraltar was then called, and after three years reached Egypt again.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Why were the Phœnicians able to build their splendid ships?

2. Find on the map Phœnicia, Tyre, and Sidon.

3. Trace the route of a Phœnician ship on its way to get tin in Britain.

4. What famous colony did the Phœnicians found in Africa?

5. The Phœnicians were the most famous sailors of these early days. What would a Phœnician captain see on one of our modern transatlantic steamships that was not in use in his day?

6. The famous Phœnician purple dye came from a shellfish. Where do most of our dyes come from today?

7. The Greek poet Homer writes of a beautiful silver bowl made in Phœnicia. Where is rich silver work done in America?

8. Primitive man had no means of closing his windows and keeping out the cold except by the use of skins and rush mats. What discovery of the Phœnicians allows us to have window-panes and light, and to be comfortable even in cold weather?

9. While you are reading this book, why should it recall the Phœnicians to you?

10. The cedars of Lebanon were renowned in the early Biblical days. Where may famous cedars be seen today?

11. A Phœnician vessel had generally about thirty men to row and sail it. Find out how many are required on a modern steamship like the *Leviathan*.

12. The name "Phœnicia" meant the land of palms, and that country was very prosperous and fertile. Is it true now?

CHAPTER VII

THE BABYLONIANS AND ASSYRIANS

Sargon; Hammurabi

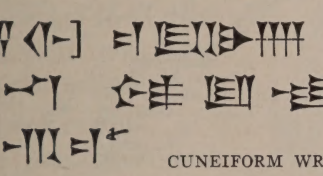
While the Egyptians were at the height of their power, the Babylonians were building up a great nation in the rich lands of the valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. Babylonia was at that time a land of great fertility. Not only were the fields green with waving grain, but palm trees were seen on all sides, the river was filled with fish, and millions of wild fowl lived along its banks. This region is sometimes called Mesopotamia, a name which means the land between the rivers. The earliest great ruler of the Babylonians was Sargon the First, who lived about three thousand years before Christ. He brought under his rule all the country as far west as the Mediterranean Sea.

A thousand years later another great ruler appeared, named Hammurabi. He built up the wonderful city of Babylon, and dug canals to bring water to the fields of wheat and barley. The laws of this ruler are the oldest body of laws in the world. They were written about four thousand years ago, on a stone column. Because of the peculiar writing, they can be read only by special scholars. The writing was done by means of a reed with a wedge-shaped point, called a stylus. This was pressed on soft clay, making a wedge-shaped character. The clay, in the shape of bricks, was then baked, and became very hard. As a result, these bricks with their peculiar characters

have come down to us through the long centuries. This wedge-shaped writing is called cuneiform, from the Latin word *cuneus*, which means a wedge. For many years scholars have been digging into the mounds of earth here and have found thousands of bricks with the cuneiform writing upon them. From this writing they have secured the story of the early life of these people.

Life in Babylonia

The Babylonians lived in low houses made of sun-dried brick; for there was little or no stone in their country. The outer walls were of burnt brick. To the Babylonians



CUNEIFORM WRITING

we owe a great deal of our knowledge of astronomy. They were the first to divide the year into months, the months into weeks, and the weeks into days. They invented the sundial and a system of weights and measures. They were the first to use the wheeled cart and chariot. They were the first to build doorways and gates in the form of an arch. They cut precious stones with great skill. They made beautiful articles of pottery. They believed in a Supreme Being, named Marduk, and in a life after death. Their temples were towers built up in stages or stories, each smaller than the one below it. At the top was a round tower, which was the shrine of the god. To ascend from one story to another they used a sloping walk instead of stairs.

Rise of Assyria

In the eighth century before Christ the Assyrians, a cruel and warlike people living in the upper country of the Tigris River, overthrew the Babylonians. All Western Asia fell under the power of Assyria, which became the first great world empire. Besides their foot soldiers, armed

MAP OF THE TIGRIS-EUPHRATES VALLEY

with bow, sword, and shield, the Assyrians had war chariots and cavalry. With this equipment no army for years could stand against them. Nineveh, their capital, was on the Tigris River. Their king, Sennacherib, made it one of the most beautiful cities in the world. The palaces, temples, and houses were built of glazed brick, in the most brilliant of colors. The interiors were adorned with pictures and sculptures, and at the mighty gates of cedar were immense stone figures with heads of men, bodies of lions or bulls, and wings of angels.

Sennacherib attacked the kingdom of Judah and captured a large part of it. The Bible says he threatened the city of Jerusalem, but was driven off by an angel of the Lord. He captured and destroyed the city of Babylon (689 B.C.). His son even conquered distant Egypt.

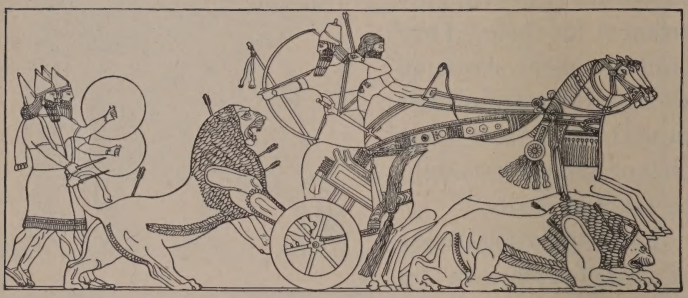
Although they were always ready to wage war, the Assyrians were able rulers. They divided the lands they conquered into provinces and arranged a very successful system of government for them. They built excellent roads in all directions from their capital, that their most distant territories might be reached easily.

WINGED BULL OF ASSYRIA

The Assyrians were at last overthrown by the Chaldeans, or Later Babylonians as they are sometimes called. Their mighty capital Nineveh was destroyed. This was six hundred years before Christ. The Assyrian nation passed away, and today only heaps of sand and rubbish mark the spot of far-famed Nineveh. During the last century explorers have dug into these mounds of sand, and have found the remains of long-vanished cities. Immense palaces and temples have been brought to view, as well as wonderful statues, paintings, furniture, and jewelry. Piles of carved bricks have proved to be the cuneiform library gathered by one of the Assyrian kings. From these books scholars have read the history of Assyria and Babylonia, lost for four thousand years.

The Glories of Babylon

The Chaldeans, who destroyed the Assyrians' power, made Babylon their capital. They filled this great city on the banks of the Euphrates with splendid buildings, palaces, and temples. Their mighty ruler Nebuchadnezzar, who reigned six hundred years before Christ, built before his palace vast terraces which looked out over the Babylonian plain. On these terraces were beautiful gardens with palms and the rarest of plants and flowers.



AN ASSYRIAN KING HUNTING LIONS

These were the famous Hanging Gardens of Babylon, which are considered one of seven wonders of the ancient world. Entirely around the great city Nebuchadnezzar built vast walls, sixty miles in length. In the walls were a hundred gates of brass. Over the Euphrates, which flowed directly through the city, many artistic bridges were erected. The vast capital was filled with the richest treasures of the East. On the plains around the city, great harvests of wheat, barley, and millet were raised and gave the people a generous supply of food. The date palm furnished them its fruit in great quantities.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. On what famous river was the capital of the Babylonians situated?

2. What kind of writing did the Babylonians use?

3. For what famous work was Hammurabi noted?

4. What have we learned from the Babylonians about the calendar?

5. Tell about the glories of Nineveh.

6. What were the Hanging Gardens of Babylon?

7. See if you can find a list of the Seven Wonders of the World.

8. Trace the courses of the Tigris and the Euphrates.

9. From the days of Babylon and Nineveh there has been little interest in Mesopotamia until recently. What is the cause of the present active interest in this region?

CHAPTER VIII

THE PERSIANS

The Rise of Persia; Zoroaster

In the meantime, at the head of the Persian Gulf a small nation called Persia had been slowly growing up. Persia was a small country, dry and rocky. It was about as large as the state of New York. The Persians were a branch of the third division of the human race. We have already learned about the Hamites and Semites. This third division, called the Aryan, included, besides the Persians, the Greeks, Hindus, Romans, Celts, Teutons, and other peoples of Europe.

The Persians' great religious teacher was Zoroaster. He taught that a supreme lord, Ahura-Mazda, was the god of light, against whom was always warring a spirit of evil and darkness, named Ahriman, aided by a host of demons. Good thoughts, good words, good deeds, formed the creed of Zoroaster. An ancient historian says the boys of Persia were taught to tell the truth, to shoot the bow, and to ride the horse.

Cyrus the Great

It needed only a great ruler to start the Persians on the way to world power. That leader came five hundred and fifty years before Christ. His name was Cyrus the Great. He organized his army, and especially his wonderful cavalry, with great skill. His soldiers were armed

with sword, spear, and bow. They used chariots of war which were armed with scythes. With this well-trained army Cyrus swept all before him. He overthrew the Medes, who held a wide territory north of the Persians, and led his victorious armies across Asia Minor to the Mediterranean Sea, conquering the ancient kingdom of Lydia.

THE PERSIAN EMPIRE

In Lydia was coined the first money in the world. Up to this time taxes had been paid by goods, and trade was carried on by direct exchange of one thing for another. Wherever gold and silver had been used, it had been merely weighed. The king of Lydia cut the gold and silver into pieces of a certain size, and stamped each piece. By this system it no longer needed to be weighed. This was a great step forward in the progress of commerce and trade.

Crœsus, King of Lydia

The king of Lydia was Crœsus. His country had many silver mines, and he was one of the richest men in the world. A certain wise man named Solon came from Greece to visit Crœsus. He was shown the wonderful palaces of the king and his treasuries full of gold, silver, and precious stones. Crœsus asked Solon, "Who is the happiest man in the world?" Of course, he expected Solon to name him. Solon did not do so, but mentioned a poor man in Greece. Crœsus then asked him, "Who is the next happiest?" Solon again answered, but did not name Crœsus. Thereupon Crœsus asked, "Do you not think me happy?" Solon answered, "Count no man happy till he dies."

Crœsus heard of the success of Cyrus's army and feared for his kingdom, which reached from the Halys River, in Asia Minor, to the Mediterranean Sea. He sent a messenger to a priestess of Apollo at Delphi, in Greece, to inquire what would happen if he attacked Cyrus. It was believed that this priestess, who was called an oracle, could foretell coming events. The oracle answered, "If you cross the Halys, you will destroy a great empire." Crœsus thought she meant the empire of Cyrus. A wise man, however, trying to prevent Crœsus from war, said to him, "The Persians wear leather clothes, eat poor food, drink water instead of wine, and have only a rocky, dry country. If you conquer them, you will gain nothing; if you are defeated, you will lose all."

Crœsus, however, believing in the oracle of Delphi, determined on war. He crossed the Halys River, met Cyrus, and overthrew his own empire. Cyrus condemned Crœsus to be burned to death. When Crœsus sat on the towering pile of wood, he cried out, "Solon, thou wast right."

Cyrus heard the cry, and asked him what he meant. Crœsus retold the story to Cyrus, who in pity pardoned him and saved his life.

Cyrus now drew near the mighty city of Babylon.

In the Bible the story is told that at a great feast Belshazzar, the king of Babylon, seeing handwriting in

BELSHAZZAR AND DANIEL

strange characters on the wall, sent for the prophet Daniel to tell him what it meant. Daniel said the kingdom would be overthrown.

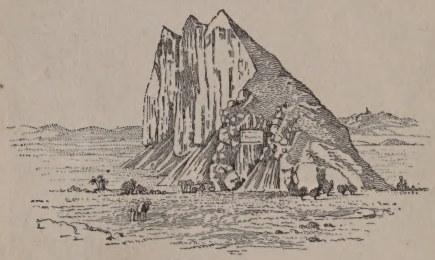
In the dead of night Cyrus turned from its bed the Euphrates River, which flowed through Babylon, and entering the city under the walls, easily captured it. He put Belshazzar and thousands of his people to death. This was the end of the Chaldean power.

After the death of Cyrus, in battle, his son Cambyses carried on his father's plans and conquered Egypt. The Persians now ruled from the Desert of Sahara to the borders of India.

Darius, King of Kings

Darius followed Cambyses. He divided his vast empire into twenty parts, over each of which he placed a satrap, or governor. In this way he easily directed his vast empire. He ruled with great pomp. His throne was of gold, silver, and ebony, and his dress of costly silk. He built vast roads to join his capital, Susa, to the provinces.

With their fleets the Persians traded along the coasts of the Mediterranean. By their victories in war, the Persians were able to gather the wealth of other nations and bring it back to their country. For this reason war was the industry which they found most profitable. Persia became the second great world empire. So great was its extent from India to the Danube that the ruler called himself the king of kings.



THE BEHISTUN ROCK

In western Persia on a cliff called the Behistun Rock, Darius had carvings made which told of his wonderful victories. These carvings remain to this day.

About four hundred years before Christ a king named Artaxerxes sat on the throne of Persia. His brother, named Cyrus, a brilliant warrior, decided to secure the throne. To a large force of Persian soldiers Cyrus added ten thousand Greeks. After a five months' march Cyrus met his brother's army near Babylon, the capital. The battle was turning in favor of Cyrus, when he was struck by a javelin and killed. His army, now without a leader, was defeated.

March of the Ten Thousand

The ten thousand Greeks were seventeen hundred miles from home, in the midst of the enemy's country. To add to their danger, it was midwinter. The chief officer of their retreat was a Greek named Xenophon. Fighting their way mile by mile, they passed through Persia and the snow-blocked passes of Armenia. The native tribesmen attacked them on all sides. In spite of losses of men from cold, battle, and hunger, Xenophon led his little army on and on until one day the men in the front ranks began to cry out, "The Sea! The Sea!" They had reached the Black Sea, and felt that their troubles were over—for here were many Greek grain ships on which they were brought back to their homes again. The story of their wonderful march and retreat is told by Xenophon himself, in a book called the Anabasis, which means "going up" or "going inland." It is read in Greek in many schools today.

THE SEA! THE SEA!

This expedition of the Ten Thousand had a great effect on the later history of the world. It showed the Greeks that the great Persian Empire was not really strong, and could be overthrown by a well-trained body of men. Alexander the Great carried out the idea, as we shall see.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the early religion of the Persians?
2. What forward step in trade did Lydia give the world?
3. Describe the kingdom of Cyrus the Great.
4. Tell the story of Crœsus.
5. Read in the book of Daniel, in the Bible, the story of Belshazzar.
6. What was the Anabasis? What was its effect on history?

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

3000 B.C. (*about*): Sargon the First, of Babylon.
2100 B.C.: Hammurabi, of Babylon.
1200 B.C. (*about*): The Phœnicians invent the alphabet.
1000 B.C.: Leadership of the Phœnician cities Sidon and Tyre.
850 B.C. (*about*): The Phœnicians found Carthage.
722 B.C.: Sargon the Second.
705–681 B.C.: Sennacherib.
689 B.C.: The fall of Babylon.
688 B.C.: Nineveh becomes the capital of Assyria.
606 B.C.: The Chaldeans destroy Nineveh.
600 B.C. (*about*): The Chaldeans reëstablish Babylon.
550 B.C.: The rise of Cyrus the Great.
539 B.C.: Cyrus captures Babylon.
525 B.C.: Cambyses conquers Egypt.
521–485 B.C.: Darius the Great.

CHAPTER IX

THE GREEKS

The Land of Greece

While the Persians were at the height of their power, a new nation was rising to the westward. It was the nation of the Greeks, who were at first shepherds from Thrace. Seeking new pasture lands for their flocks, they drove out the other inhabitants and even spread their rule over the islands of the Ægean Sea. They conquered Crete, where a wonderful civilization had been built up by the Cretan sea kings.

Greece, a small country about half as large as the state of Illinois, is a peninsula, shaped somewhat like a triangle. No point in Greece is more than forty miles from the sea. The country is divided into many small plains and valleys by steep mountain ranges. Mount Olympus, in the northern part, is the highest peak. It is ten thousand feet high, and was believed by the ancient Greeks to be the home of the gods. The climate of Greece is so mild that the people can live out of doors a great part of the year.

On the sloping sides of the mountains the inhabitants cared for their herds and flocks. In the valleys were grown wheat, flax, and barley; and on the hillsides grapes, currants, olives, figs, and pomegranates were raised.

Through the valleys between the ranges ran many small streams, but there were no great rivers to aid commerce between the various states. The coast had many good

harbors, especially on the east side. For this reason the Greeks carried on their trade mainly with peoples to the east, in Asia Minor, and not with those in Europe. The sea about Greece is dotted with hundreds of islands, so that in clear weather they could go to Asia Minor without losing sight of land. The Greeks loved the sea, and in their ships went to all parts of the Mediterranean, and even as far as the Black Sea. It was called by them the Euxine. On its shores they had many colonies. The Greek boats were small, with a single mast and a square sail. The boats carried many rowers, who used their oars when the wind was blowing against them. They crept from cape to cape or from port to port, since they had no compass. There were no lighthouses to mark the reefs or other dangerous places. At nightfall they turned toward a sandy beach and drew their boats up for the night. These voyages brought them to other peoples, and not only helped commerce, but led to an exchange of ideas and gave the Greeks a broad view of life.

The City-States

The Greek people had a very strong love of freedom, and were therefore very independent. Being separated from each other by mountain ranges, they built up a form of government called the city-state. The leading city-states of Greece were Athens, Sparta, Corinth, and Thebes. The free citizens met in a body in the open air, voted, and ruled the city. It was the beginning of democratic rule in Europe.

That every man should take part in making the laws and ruling the state, was the great lesson which Greece taught to the world, and the benefits of which we now

enjoy. Such a form of government had never been worked out before. The city-state controlled the country round it, which was laid out in farms and villages. The various city-states, however, were independent of each other, and never united to make a single great nation of Greece. Although they believed in the same gods, they had no general government for all Greece. At times they formed leagues or alliances, but these never lasted for any great length of time.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the effect of the mountains on Greece? of the coast line?

2. Compare Greece with Egypt and Mesopotamia.

3. Why did the Greeks become great sailors?

4. What is meant by a Greek city-state?

5. Name some of the leading city-states.

6. Explain what the word "patriotism" meant to a Greek.

7. The Phœnicians and the Greeks drew up their ships on the shore at night. Why can ships now sail as well by night as by day?

8. Find, on the map, Athens, Sparta, Marathon, Salamis, Thermopylæ, Thebes, and Corinth.

CHAPTER X

THE RELIGION OF THE GREEKS

The Gods of Greece

Religion was an important part of Greek life and Greek culture, as can be seen in their paintings and their sculptures. It was the link that bound together the different peoples of Greece.

According to Greek belief, the gods, of whom there were many, lived and feasted on the summit of Mount Olympus, in northern Greece. The father and king of gods and men was called Zeus. The Romans called him Jupiter.

Zeus rewarded the good and punished the wicked. He sent the gentle rain, to water the dry earth and cause the crops to grow. When angry, he hurled thunderbolts upon the earth, which trembled at his nod. The wife of Zeus was Hera or Juno, a beautiful but proud and jealous goddess who pursued her enemies with undying hatred. She was the goddess of the sky, and queen of heaven.

Aphrodite or Venus was the goddess of love. She was very beautiful. She was born from the white foam of the sea.

Athena or Minerva, the fair, gray-eyed goddess of wisdom, was born in a most wonderful way. Zeus had a severe headache, and asked the blacksmith god, Hephæstus or Vulcan, to help him. Hephæstus had his great forge under Mount Ætna in Sicily, and whenever he blew his bellows the flames rose out of the mountain. In answer

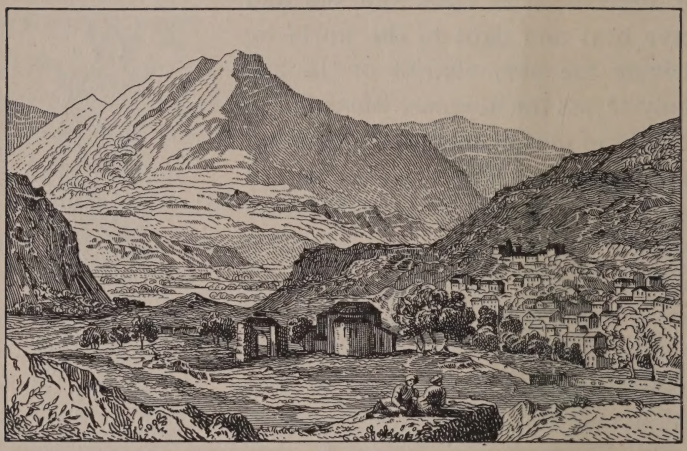
to the appeal of Zeus, Hephæstus hit Zeus on the head with an ax, splitting the skull open. At once a goddess, fully dressed in armor, sprang out. It was Athena. She was the goddess of the potter, weaver, and craftsman. She is always armed with spear, shield, and breastplate.

There were many other gods. Among them was Apollo or Phœbus, who ruled the sun and gave heat and light to the world by driving the fiery chariot of the sun daily across the heavens. He was also the god of music and poetry. Another was Hermes or Mercury, who served as the messenger of the gods. He wore sandals with wings attached, by which he flew swiftly from place to place. Artemis or Diana was the sister of Apollo. She ruled the moon. She was also the goddess of hunting. Ares or Mars was the terrible god of war.

DIANA

Poseidon or Neptune was the brother of Zeus. He ruled the oceans. He lived in a cave of coral and pearl beneath the oceans. He came up in his chariot drawn by three horses, holding a trident or three-pronged spear in his hand. When he appeared, if a storm was raging, the waves became suddenly calm. Demeter or Ceres was the Earth-mother, the goddess of the harvest and of the flowers. Dionysus or Bacchus was the god of wine and revelry. Pluto ruled the world of the dead, a dreary, dark region far below the earth. All these gods lived with Zeus on Mount Olympus, in houses of brass built by Hephæstus. Their food was ambrosia and they drank nectar from

golden bowls. In spite of the great failings of the Greek religion as a moral force, it helped the people to look with respect and reverence upon the oath, the family tie, and the sacredness of life. It tried to teach kindness to the poor and brought forth prominently the idea of the presence of the deity in the everyday affairs of men.



MOUNT PARNASSUS

Mount Parnassus in central Greece was supposed to be the dwelling place of the Muses, who were nine sisters. They had charge of poetry, history, music, tragedy, comedy, dancing, singing, hymns, and astronomy. The gods were believed to be immortal.

The Oracle of Apollo

The Greeks believed that the gods, especially Apollo, spoke to them through oracles; that is, the gods told their wishes to men and revealed the future. There was a sacred and rich shrine of Apollo at Delphi, at the foot

of Mount Parnassus. The priestess here sat on a chair placed over an opening in the rock from which came the breath of the gods in the form of vapor or steam. The priestess, overcome by the vapor, uttered words which were taken down and were believed to be the answer of the god. Often the answers were so given that, no matter what the result might be, the answer would be correct, as we have seen in the case of Crœsus.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Where was the home of the Greek gods?
2. Name five of the leading Greek gods.
3. How was Athena born?
4. Who were the Muses?
5. Describe the oracle.
6. Find, on the map, Delphi, Mount Olympus, and Mount Parnassus.

CHAPTER XI

THE SPARTANS

Life in Sparta

The two leading peoples of Greece were the Spartans and the Athenians. A Spartan lawgiver, Lycurgus by name, made the laws for his people. He had traveled to many countries, to see how other people lived. On his return he divided the land among the citizens, giving to each just enough to support him. He asked the wealthy citizens to give their gold and silver to the state, but they refused. He therefore coined iron money, and would not allow any other kind to be used. As this money was heavy, it was not possible to have much of it at any one time. It would require, it was said, a cartload to pay even a small debt.

Lycurgus now planned to go abroad, and asked the citizens to swear that they would make no changes in his laws during his absence. They all took this oath, and he at once went abroad and never returned. He hoped in this way to bind them forever by their oath.

The Spartans were trained for war. Their city-state was really nothing more than a camp in a deep valley surrounded by mountains. Their whole aim was to build up a body of warrior citizens. When they went to war, they not only put on their best armor, but crowned themselves with wreaths of flowers. Singing a song of joy as the flutes played, they rushed at the enemy. If victorious,

the Spartans seldom destroyed the city of their enemy, and Athens, when it fell into their hands, was spared.

The free inhabitants of Sparta numbered only ten thousand fighting men. Slaves did the manual work, for the citizens thought that it was beneath them. Children were considered to belong to the state, rather than to their parents. At birth a baby was brought before the council.

GREEKS LISTENING TO THE POEMS OF HOMER

If it did not appear to be strong, it was exposed to death in the mountains. At the age of seven, boys were given in charge to teachers who trained them in feats of war. Their food was simple, and their training most severe. In the gymnasium they practiced running, wrestling, riding, and throwing the spear. It is said they were at times flogged to make them endure pain with bravery. They went barefooted both summer and winter. Their beds were made of rushes and reeds, which they gathered from the river banks. Every day they plunged into the river, no matter how cold the weather was. The Spartans were allowed only one tunic or outer garment each year.

Spartan Bravery

The girls were taught to be brave and to admire only brave men. The Spartan state owed a great deal to the mothers, who were ready to help in any danger.

A story is told of a Spartan youth who stole a young fox and hid it under his coat. Rather than have his deed found out, he allowed the animal to tear him without showing the least sign of pain. The Spartans wore light clothing even in the coldest weather. A Spartan mother said to her son as he was going to battle, "My son, return with your shield or on it"; in other words, win or die in the attempt. A Spartan king was told that the enemy were numerous. He replied, "We don't ask how many are the enemy, but where are they."

So proud were the Spartans of their strength in war that they did not build a wall round their city, as did most of the other peoples of Greece. Lycurgus said, "The walls of Sparta are her citizens." No beautiful buildings adorned the streets of Sparta, and no art or literature was produced.

Spartan citizens ate at a common table. Their food was bread, cheese, and bean soup. They used a great deal of olive oil. Iron money, as we have seen, was their only money. They were not allowed to engage in commerce, or to go away from Sparta.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Tell some facts about Lycurgus.
2. Describe the training of a Spartan boy.
3. What was the money of Sparta?
4. Tell the story of the Spartan boy and the fox.
5. Why were there no walls round Sparta?

CHAPTER XII

LIFE IN ATHENS

The Founding of Athens

The Athenian view of life was far different from that of Sparta. At the founding of the city of Athens two gods, according to the legend, tried to secure possession of the land, Poseidon (or Neptune) and Athena (or Minerva). The gods of Olympus were asked to decide the contest, which took place on the Acropolis, one of the four hills of Athens. Poseidon struck the rock where he stood, and a horse leaped forth ready to serve man. Athena lightly touched the ground with her spear, and an olive tree sprang up. The gods awarded the city to Athena, and it received her name. From this time the olive tree was held to be a sacred tree.

The Athenians believed in a beautiful city, with temples, palaces, and open-air theaters, which the climate allowed them to enjoy. A wall surrounded the city.

Life in Ancient Athens

The central point in the life of Athens was the market place, adorned with public buildings, temples, painted colonnades, baths, altars, statues of the gods and Greek heroes, and porticoes shaded by plane trees.

Here also could be found the buyers and sellers of goods, the fish and meat dealers, the pottery makers, the money changers, the sellers of vegetables, and the barber shops.

The Grecian women remained secluded at home, and the men went forth each morning with their slaves to buy food or other articles, and to enjoy the bath. Here in the shops or on the seats along the porticoes they rested and talked politics, or walked up and down with some teacher or philosopher. Since practically all the citizens came here daily, it was the common meeting place where the events of the day could be discussed.

ATHENA

The shops were kept by the poorer classes of the people; it was not considered respectable for an Athenian citizen to engage in trade, although he might lend money for that purpose. At one time in Thebes no one could take part in the government who had engaged in trade within ten years. There were booths and stalls and stores for the sale of goods in the market place, which in Athens was an extensive district. There were even stores for the sale of slaves, many of whom had been brought from Asia Minor and the countries about the Black Sea.

Fish was a leading article of sale, for the Athenian ate little meat, preferring fish and vegetables. To prevent fish from being kept for high prices, a dealer was forbid-

den to water the fish or to have seats in his store. The sale of fish began at the ringing of a bell, and the people hastened to buy. A story is told of a musician who was giving a concert when the bell happened to ring. Everyone at once left him except one man. He thanked this man for staying. The man was deaf, however, and had not heard the bell. When he learned why the crowd had departed, he also left at once.

Besides fresh fish, large quantities of salt fish were brought to Greece from Spain and from the countries about the Black and Caspian seas.

Bread was sold in the market place, since there was a custom not to bake it at home. Pottery, dishes of all kinds, and flowers could be purchased. The money changers did a thriving business, changing the valuable gold and silver coins into those of lower values.

Athenian Dress; Homes

The Athenian wore a short woolen shirt, with or without sleeves, and over this a mantle of wool, five or six feet wide and ten feet long. This mantle was wound round the body and thrown over the left shoulder. It reached to the knee. It was at times beautifully embroidered, and great care was taken to have the folds of this outer garment fall with grace and beauty. Except on long journeys no hat was worn.

The hair of the men was worn long, that of the boys short. Women had a net over their hair which was carefully gathered in a knot on the head, as we see in many famous statues in the museums of our large cities. A band of gold was often worn around the forehead and hair.

The Greek wore at times a ring, which was engraved with a signet. He used this to press on the hot wax of documents, wills, and letters, to seal them and prove the documents to be the property of the man who owned the ring, as the two to be genuine had to agree.

GREEK COSTUMES

Grecian houses of the better class were generally of one story. They were built of stone or brick covered with stucco. The walls were painted in colors of artistic beauty. The roof was generally flat.

At the front entrance was an altar to Apollo, beside which grew a laurel. A porter guarded the entrance. In the mosaic floor was often inserted the Greek word for welcome. Since there was no doorbell, a visitor used the knocker to secure admission to the home.

Inside the entrance was a large open court. Around this open court was a colonnade with rooms opening into it. Here the men of the family lived. In this delightful climate a building of this type was comfortable.

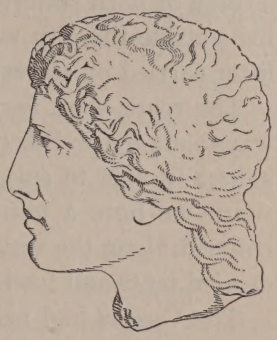
Back of the large court was another, likewise open to the sky. This was surrounded by a number of small rooms opening into it. Here the women lived. In the rear were

small rooms for the servants, who were of course generally slaves. There were few windows, since most of the rooms were built round the open courts.

The houses were heated with fireplaces or with charcoal stoves; for at that time neither steam nor hot-water systems of heating were in use.

Water was brought from neighboring fountains. Rain-water was caught in cisterns. There was, however, no regular water system for the city.

Oil lamps were used for lighting. The lamp was generally made of clay or bronze. It had as a rule no feet but rested directly on the table.



HEAD OF A GRECIAN GODDESS

How the Athenians Dined

The Athenians ate reclining on couches. The food and drink were placed on a small table before them, and leaning on their left arm they took the meal. Music was often played during the dinner.

The Greeks did not have tablecloths, napkins, knives, or forks. The solid food was picked up with their fingers. Spoons were in use. Slaves passed towels round with spiced water after each course to wash the hands of the guests.

A favorite dish of the Greeks was a porridge made of beans and peas. They used bread, made of wheat or barley. They ate in small quantities lamb, pork, goat's flesh, hares, ducks, poultry, and sausages. On their table could be seen lettuce, onions, leeks, and cabbage. They were fond of oysters and other shellfish.

A wife did not eat with her husband if he had a guest for dinner. Most of the time she remained in the women's part of the house. It was not customary for her to go out of doors, even with a slave, without her husband's permission.

Travel; Timepieces

The streets were not lighted, and at night a slave with a torch or horn lantern went ahead of his master. Traveling outside the city was by horseback or carriage, or by litter carried by slaves.

The roads were very bad, and the inns along the highways were not well kept. The wealthy Greek traveler was generally able to stay at the home of some rich man, to whom he bore a letter of introduction. Many travelers camped along the way, being accompanied by slaves who carried tents and food.

The Greeks had neither clock nor watch. They measured time as well as they could by an upright staff or column. The shadow it cast was measured, and thus the time of day was found. This was of course of no value at night, nor on days when the sun was not shining.

Another device for measuring time was a peculiar type of water clock, a receptacle out of which the water slowly trickled. Since they knew how long it required to empty the vessel, they could tell from the amount of water about what time it was.

Burial Customs

In passing through the market place an Athenian might meet a funeral procession. Preceded by flute players and by relatives and male friends, the body of the deceased,

clothed in white, rested on a couch carried by slaves. Garlands of flowers decorated the couch. The female relatives, dressed in black and at times with their hair cut off, followed behind the couch to the place of burial. It was the custom to put a coin in the mouth of the dead person to pay the passage of the soul across the Styx River to Hades, the region of the dead.

At the place of burial the body was either burned or buried, according to local custom. If the body was burned, the ashes were gathered in a vase or urn of bronze or pottery. Offerings of milk, honey, olives, and flowers were left for the soul of the deceased. In Sparta, Lycurgus ordered the dead to be buried in the city with a public funeral, that the people might become accustomed to the view of death and lose all fear of it.

The greatest misfortune that could come to a Greek was to lie unburied after death; for the Greeks believed that the spirit would then have to wander forever without rest. Criminals who had been executed, and traitors who were put to death, were left unburied.

By the law of some of the Grecian states a father could decide whether his newborn child should be allowed to live or not. If he decided that the child was not to be reared, it was taken to an exposed spot and left in a large earthern vessel to perish. As a rule, it was a female child that was exposed to death.

Child Life and Education

The mother cared for the children, both boys and girls, until their sixth year. Grecian children had toys of many kinds, as do the children of today. They used the hoop, and spun the top. They were told by their nurses stories

of the gods and giants, and fairy tales, to which they listened as eagerly as do our young children to the stories of Jack the Giant Killer or Little Red Riding-hood.

At the end of the sixth year the boy was taken in charge by an attendant called a pedagogue. He was generally a slave. Some of these pedagogues, however, had been captured in the sack of some Grecian or Asiatic city, and were well educated.

The pedagogue, bearing the schoolbooks and supplies, led the boy to school. At the close of school he took the boy to the gymnasium or back to his home. The school was generally private, for the cities of Greece did not provide schools for their children at public expense.

The schools began early in the morning. The pupils sat on benches, instead of at desks as we do. The Grecian boys were taught reading, writing, arithmetic, and music, especially the use of the lyre. They read Homer, who wrote the Iliad and the Odyssey, and they also read Hesiod, who wrote about the life of the farmer.

In the gymnasium the boys learned to run, jump, and wrestle, to throw the spear, to use the bow, and even to dance, that they might move with grace; for the Athenians believed in a sound mind in a sound body.

There were no schools for girls. They were taught at home, so far as they received any education at all. They learned, however, how to sew and cook.

So eager was one youth to obtain an education that on hearing that a famous teacher was to arrive at daybreak he hurried outside the city walls to meet him. Some teachers walked up and down the porticoes, asking and answering questions, the students walking along with them.

THE ACROPOLIS OF ATHENS IN ANCIENT TIMES

At the age of eighteen the young Athenian was examined by the council, to learn if his parents were Athenians and what his correct age was. If the council was satisfied, he took an oath by which he promised not to dishonor the arms he was receiving, not to desert his comrades on the field of battle, to fight for his country, and to uphold the religion of the state. He received his spear and shield in the presence of the people. His friends were invited to his house for a feast. He was now a citizen of Athens. He could vote in the assembly, which was held in the open air, and he had a right to speak there to his fellow citizens. He helped to make the laws, and took an active part in the government of the state. A government in which all the citizens take part is called a democracy, a word which means the rule of the people. The Athenian democracy was the first the world had ever known.

The Athenians despised war except for the defense of their city; but they could fight with great bravery when it was necessary. The civilization of the Athenians became the most wonderful in the world.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. How did Athens receive its name?

2. Which city should you have preferred to live in, Athens or Sparta?

3. Describe a school in Athens.

4. What is the meaning of "democracy"? of "civilization"?

CHAPTER XIII

ART AND POLITICS OF THE GREEKS

The Art of the Greeks

The Greeks developed a wonderful art, which is seen at its best in the Greek temples. They had three types or orders of architecture. The Doric column was simple in its lines, with a square top. It may have been an imitation of the rude logs of their earliest temples.

The Ionic column was graceful and slender, with rolled tops, curled, it was said, like a woman's hair on the sides of her face.

The Corinthian column was the most beautiful of all. According to the story, an artist saw a basket of flowers with the leaves and blossoms hanging gracefully over its sides. A tile or stone had been laid on it to keep it from being blown over by the wind. The artist made a sketch, which was the beginning of this beautiful type of column. It may be seen on many of our public buildings today, copied from the Greeks.

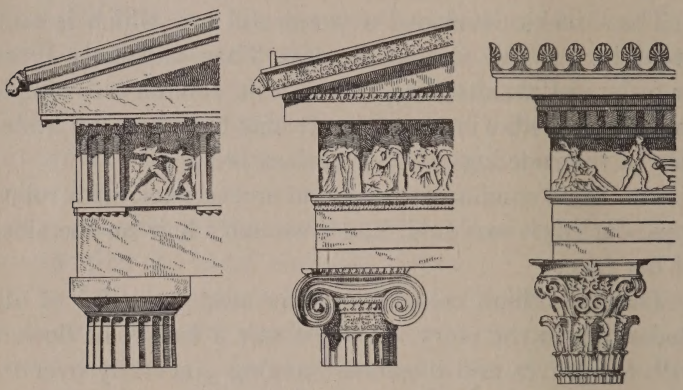
From the style of the columns they are called the severe Doric, the graceful Ionic, and the ornate Corinthian. The beauty of these Greek columns has never been equaled.

The arch was not used by the Greeks, and cement had not been discovered by them. This limited the size of their buildings.

Art and literature were the great gifts which the Greeks handed down to the later nations of the world.

Citizenship in Athens

At Athens none but citizens had the right to vote. To be a citizen, a man must have been born of an Athenian father. It was rare that citizenship was conferred on outsiders, or "barbarians," as they were termed. The meetings of the citizens were generally held in the open air, on the Pnyx Hill. Here they decided all great questions of



THREE STYLES OF GREEK PILLARS

the day, war or peace, taxation, and commerce; and here their officers were selected. As all Athenian citizens were believed to be well enough educated to hold any office, most officials were chosen by lot from the entire body of citizens. In the third century before Christ there were in Athens twenty-one thousand citizens, ten thousand strangers, and four hundred thousand bondmen or slaves.

A peculiar custom in use in Athens was called ostracism (from *ostracon*, a clay tablet or shell). If the citizens wished to banish anyone from the city, they voted

by writing his name on the shell. He could be sent into exile for ten years, if enough citizens voted against him.

This form of punishment was at times used very unjustly. It is said Aristides was asked by a voter who did not know him, and who could not write, to put the name of Aristides on a shell. Aristides asked him what wrong Aristides had ever done him. The voter answered, "None, but I am tired of hearing him called 'the Just.'" The vote against Aristides was so large that he was ostracized, and had to go into exile.

Slaves were numerous, as we have seen, and they did the labor of the city, not only in the humbler work of tilling the soil, cooking and baking, but in conducting shops and stores, and working at trades like carpentry. Many of the slaves were white captives who had been taken in war. A large number of the teachers were slaves who had been teachers when their cities were captured by the Athenians, and who had been reduced to slavery and sold.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Name the three orders of Greek architecture.

2. Are there any buildings in your city that use any of these orders?

3. How did a Grecian temple differ from a modern church?

4. Were there any tall buildings in Greece?

5. What materials do we use today that were unknown to the Greeks?

6. What is the meaning of "ostracism"?

CHAPTER XIV

THE PARTHENON; GREEK DRAMA

The Parthenon

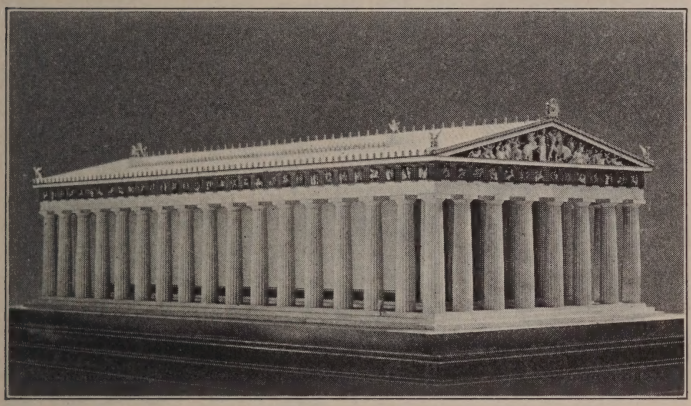
There are four hills that rise from the plain at Athens. The highest has steep sides, about two hundred feet in height, and is called the Acropolis, a word which means the highest part of the city. This hill is about one fifth of a mile long. Here was erected, under the direction of a great Greek architect named Ictinus, the wonderful white marble Doric temple called the Parthenon. It had fifty columns round it, and on all sides it was adorned with pictures in marble, carved by Phidias.

Unlike our sculptures in marble, which are a brilliant white, the Greeks added gold and ivory, with which they inlaid their marble statues, and colored the whole with delicate shades of paint. The Parthenon was erected in honor of the goddess Athena, who founded Athens. It was one of the most wonderful buildings in the world. On the Acropolis, too, was a statue of Athena, fifty feet high, made from the bronze arms taken from the Persians in battle. The golden-tipped spear which the goddess held could be seen by the sailors long before the temple came into sight. Here was also a statue of Athena as Wingless Victory. When the Athenians were asked why she was without wings, they replied that they wished her to stay with them forever, and so they did not give her wings lest she might fly away.

A famous hill close by was the Hill of Ares (or Mars). Saint Paul preached here (A.D. 54) a famous sermon. He said that as he passed by he saw an altar dedicated to the unknown God; and he told them of Him whom they worshiped without knowing.

The Greek Theater

In the schools of Athens were recited the famous poems of Homer. In their theater the Greeks saw what were at



THE PARTHENON

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

first dances in honor of Dionysus, after the harvest was completed. Many years later their poets told of the gods of Olympus or wrote stirring scenes of their history. Many of these plays were written by the world-famous poets. The theater was built in the form of a half circle, on the natural rounding slope of a hill. The theater had no roof and was therefore open to the sun or rain. Facing the seats was a low and narrow stage with doorways in the

rear wall, which represented a temple or house. In the center of what we call the orchestra circle was an altar to Dionysus, about which the chorus sang and danced. The actors were all men and were generally limited to three or four. They appeared in grotesque masks. Their height was sometimes increased by the boots which they wore.

SAINT PAUL IN ATHENS

The seats were of stone without backs. The poorer citizens sat on the stones but the rich brought cushions. Sixteen thousand people could sit in the theater of Dionysus in Athens. There was little scenery used. The plays continued from morning until night without interruption. The theater was conducted by the state; the poor people were admitted free, as the theater was held to be a very important part of the life of the Athenian people.

As slaves did all the work, there was time for the Athenian citizens to go daily to the market places, temples, and assemblies, to talk politics and to see their friends. They might often meet Socrates or Plato and talk philosophy as they walked up and down the stately marble halls.

The Greeks paid great attention to the exercises which built up the human body. They thought a beautiful soul should live in a beautiful body. For this reason they exercised from youth to old age, jumping, boxing, wrestling, and throwing the spear and discus. The delicate and beautiful figures of the gods in marble are like the figures of well-formed Greeks.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the Acropolis.

2. Tell what you can about the Parthenon.

3. Have you ever seen a picture or copy of the Wingless Victory, the Discus Thrower, the Venus of Melos, or the Hermes of Praxiteles?

4. What other renowned Greek statues do you know?

5. What famous apostle preached on the Hill of Ares (or the Areopagus)?

6. How did the Grecian theater differ from ours?

7. What part did athletics play in the life of the Greeks?

CHAPTER XV

THE OLYMPIC GAMES

The Olympic Games

In Elis, in western Greece, on the north bank of the river Alpheus, was a sacred place called Olympia, one of the fairest spots in all the land, and the scene of the famous Olympic games. Olympia was adorned with beautiful temples. In the great temple of Zeus the sculptor Phidias erected a gold and ivory statue of that god which was considered one of the Seven Wonders of the World.

The Olympic games, like other Greek games, were of religious origin. Legend says that when Heracles (Hercules) conquered the land of Elis and slew its king, he consecrated this spot and instituted games in honor of his victory. In later times these games consisted of chariot racing, wrestling, foot races, jumping, throwing the discus, and hurling the spear. The games were open to any of pure Hellenic descent, except that no person guilty of crime could take part. Women might compete and win prizes as owners of teams in the chariot race, but none could enter the sacred place except the priestesses of the Greek goddess Demeter. The athletes were required to train for at least ten months. The games were held every four years. They began at daybreak and lasted all day. They continued for five days. During the month in which they were held, war was suspended that all might be free to attend.

The prizes at the Olympic games were merely wreaths or crowns of wild olive, taken from a sacred tree which grew close by. To the victor the greatest honor was paid. Often his statue was set up at Olympia. A herald announced his name, parentage, and country. Other honors and awards were conferred on him when he returned home. At times even a part of the walls of his city was taken down to allow him to enter there instead of through the ordinary gate.

At the Olympic games poets recited their verses and historians read from their works. The people were fond of hearing tales of bravery in war, especially as told by the poet Homer, who wrote two great poems called the Iliad and the Odyssey. The Iliad told of the attack on Troy by the Greeks.

The Trojan War

The cause of the Trojan War was this. King Agamemnon had a brother, Menelaus, who ruled Sparta. Menelaus's wife, Helen, was said to be the most beautiful woman in all Greece. One day Paris, son of the king of Troy, in Asia Minor, came to visit Menelaus and after a time induced Helen to leave her husband and go back with him to Troy. Agamemnon declared war when Paris refused to give her up.

From all parts of Greece warriors came, and a great expedition sailed to Asia Minor to capture Troy. For ten years they besieged the city in vain. They finally captured it by a trick.

They built a huge wooden horse, and in it they hid a small force of armed men. The Trojans of course saw the horse, but didn't know why it was being built. When

it was finished, the Greeks sent a man near the walls of Troy, where he was quickly captured. He was asked by the Trojans what the wooden horse had been built for. He said it was erected to appease the wrath of one of the gods, and if the Trojans should bring the horse into the city, Troy could never be taken. The Trojans foolishly believed him, made a hole in their wall, and dragged the horse in without examining it. At night the soldiers in the horse quietly came out and opened the gates of the city. The Greeks rushed in, killed the king and most of the people, and set fire to the city, which was completely destroyed.

The greatest hero of the Greeks was Achilles. The greatest hero of the Trojans was Hector.

The Odyssey tells of the wanderings of the famous Greek hero Ulysses, who was king of Ithaca in Greece. After the Trojan war he sought his home for ten years and met all sorts of adventures. His beautiful wife, Penelope, waited year after year for his return, although a hundred suitors sought her hand. At last, in despair, she said she would marry the man who could send from the old bow of Ulysses an arrow through twelve rings arranged in a row. No one could bend the mighty bow. Ulysses, who had returned disguised as a beggar, asked to be allowed to try. He bent the bow with ease and sent the arrow through the rings. He then killed all but two of the suitors, and took his throne once more as king.

As we date our years from the birth of Christ, so the Greeks dated their years from the first Olympic games (776 B.C.). The period of four years beginning with each celebration was called an Olympiad. In the year 1896 of our era the Olympic games were revived, this time at

Athens, and men from all parts of the world came to the historic city to enter the various contests.

In ancient Athens an important festival was held every year. A procession took its way up the hill of the Acropolis to place a new embroidered robe on the statue of the goddess Athena. At the close of the ceremony games were held at which the prizes were beautiful oil jars, adorned with the figure of Athena. It was a national festival in which all Athenians took part.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. From what year did the Greeks date their calendar?
2. How often were the Olympic games held?
3. Who could compete? What were the prizes?
4. What were the effects of the games on the Greeks?
5. What athletic contest have we today which recalls Greece to us?
6. What prizes are given in athletic contests today?
7. What are the two most famous poems of the Greeks?

A GREEK SCHOOL

From a vase painting of the fifth century B.C.

CHAPTER XVI

THE AGE OF PERICLES

Athens and Pericles

Athens was five miles from the sea. Its harbor was joined to the city by a roadway between two walls fifteen feet thick and sixty feet high. From its harbor the Greek ships sailed to all parts of the Mediterranean world carrying the beautiful goods made by the artistic Athenians. The Greek vessels returned loaded with wheat, corn, and the delicate fabrics made in India and other Eastern countries.

Pericles, a great statesman and orator, was for more than thirty years the most influential man at Athens. Under his leadership the city rose to such splendor that the period is called the golden age of Greece (460–429 B.C.). When Pericles was dying, he said the one thing for which he wished to be remembered was that he never caused any citizen to put on mourning.

Socrates

Among the Greeks lived many wise men. One of these was the great teacher Socrates. He began life as a sculptor. During the wars he was noted for his bravery and his endurance. After the wars were over, he returned to Athens, where he spent his time in the streets, the market place, and the gymnasia. He sought knowledge, he said, and whomever he met he asked questions about his occupation, or about truth or morality. On receiving an an-

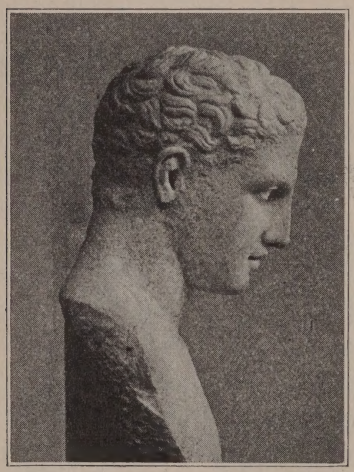
swer he would put questions which were so difficult to answer that hardly anybody dared to have a discussion with him. He had no school, but taught wherever he happened to be. He received no money for his teaching. So eager were the young Grecians to talk with him that when

AN ARGUMENT WITH SOCRATES

he appeared they gave up their games to ask him questions. In ancient Greece the pupil learned largely by listening to the words of his teacher.

After a time Socrates was accused of corrupting the boys of Athens by destroying their belief in the gods. He was brought to trial, and was condemned to drink a cup of hemlock juice, which was the Athenian way of putting

people to death. When the time at last came (339 B.C.), he took the fatal cup from the hand of his jailer, and with a smile drank it in the presence of his disciples who had come to share his last days on earth. Thus died Socrates. "Of all the men of his time whom I have known," said his pupil Phædo, "he was the wisest, and justest, and best."



HEAD OF A GREEK ATHLETE

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

Plato and Aristotle

Plato, another pupil of Socrates, also became a famous teacher. He generally taught in the Academy, a splendid garden with trees, flowers, fountains, and pleasant walks. He sometimes taught at home. Over the door of his house he ordered to be carved the words "Let no one enter here who does not know geometry."

Another great Greek teacher was Aristotle. He became a pupil of Plato, and was such an excellent scholar that Plato said, "Aristotle is the mind of my school." Aristotle was invited by Philip, king of Macedonia, a country north of Greece, to be the teacher of his son, who became the famous Alexander the Great. For four years Aristotle taught the young Alexander. Later he came to Athens, where he gave his lessons walking up and down the shady paths of a public park outside the city walls. He taught

and wrote on all kinds of subjects. For centuries the works of Plato and Aristotle have been studied in the universities of the world.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the seaport of Athens?
2. What made the age of Pericles famous?
3. Describe the appearance of Socrates.
4. Why was he condemned to death?
5. Who was Plato?
6. What famous pupil did Aristotle have?

CHAPTER XVII

GREEK AGAINST PERSIAN

The Greeks in Asia

The Greeks spread over the islands surrounding Greece, and eastward to the shores of Asia and the Black Sea. From the cities about the Black Sea they secured not only fish, wool, grain, wood, gold, iron, hides, cattle, flax, pitch, and honey, but many of their slaves. They also sailed west and settled colonies in Italy, Africa, Sicily, and southern France. The colonists were able to secure good land in these foreign countries and were glad to quit the poor soil of Greece.

Although far away, the Greeks in the colonies felt their dependence on the mother country. When leaving their home in Greece, they took with them fire from the sacred hearth of the city, and lighted in their distant home a new fire, which they kept burning to remind them of their distant native land. Since they wore the same type of clothes, spoke the same language, sang the same songs, and celebrated the same religious feasts and games as in their old home, the Greeks were seldom lonesome in their distant colony, no matter how far it was from Greece. They looked upon their colony as the daughter of the city of Greece from which they came.

Among the colonies founded by various Grecian cities were Byzantium (which became Constantinople), Cumæ on the western coast of Italy, Tarentum and Sybaris in

southern Italy, Syracuse in Sicily, Massilia (Marseille) at the mouth of the Rhone River, Cyrene in northern Africa, and Smyrna and Miletus in Asia Minor.

The Persians meet the Greeks

In the year 546 B.C., Cyrus the Great, of Persia, as he moved westward in his conquering march, captured the cities which the Greeks had established in Asia Minor. His successor crossed the Hellespont and overran the countries to the north of Greece. The Greek cities of Asia Minor did not tamely submit to the Persian rule. In the year 501 B.C., when Darius sat on the throne of Persia, the Greeks in Asia Minor resolved to win back their independence. They revolted, and burned the city of Sardis. Athens sent twenty ships to aid the Greeks, and Eretria sent five. Darius was so angry that he seized a bow, shot an arrow toward the sun, and took an oath to avenge himself on the Athenians. He ordered a servant to repeat to him at his meals, three times a day, "Master, remember the Athenians."

When at last Darius felt that he was ready, he sent heralds throughout Greece to demand earth and water. This was the Persian method of ordering the Greeks to yield to Persian rule.

"You want earth and water?" replied the Spartans; "Very well, you shall have both," and they threw the heralds into a well. The Athenians threw the heralds who came to their city into a pit where they cast criminals condemned to death.

Darius now made up his mind to punish the Greeks, and sent a great army across the Hellespont. This army was supported by a great fleet which was, however, largely destroyed by a hurricane.

TIDINGS FROM MARATHON

Battle of Marathon

A Greek army of only ten thousand men, under the Athenian general Miltiades, met the vast Persian host at Marathon and after a desperate battle defeated them (490 B.C.). Only a hundred and ninety-two Greeks were killed; the loss of the Persians amounted to more than six thousand. A legend says that a fast runner named Pheidippides carried the news to Athens, about twenty miles away. Worn out by his efforts, he could only utter the one word victory, and fell dead in the market place. The Marathon races of today bring back the memory of this.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Name some of the Greek colonies.
2. Why did the Greeks go to these colonies?
3. What part of Italy was called Greater Greece?
4. What was the cause of the Persian Wars?
5. Describe the battle of Marathon.
6. What city won this decisive battle?
7. Name some modern nations that have distant colonies.

GREEK WARRIOR

CHAPTER XVIII

THE WAR WITH PERSIA

The Spartans at Thermopylæ

Ten years after the battle of Marathon, Xerxes, son of Darius, led an army of two hundred thousand men against the Greeks. He had ordered a bridge of boats to be built at the Hellespont that his troops might cross with ease. A severe storm destroyed the bridge. Xerxes in his anger ordered the architects of the bridge to be put to death, and two hundred lashes to be given the waters of the Hellespont for destroying his works. He also had a chain let down into the water to show that he was master of both land and water.

Another bridge was built. Seven days were required for the vast army to pass over the bridge. Forty-six nations of Asia and Africa had men in the armies of the Great King, each clothed in the peculiar dress of his nation. A fleet of one thousand boats, driven by rowers, moved along the coast to help the land forces. The Spartans, under their king, Leonidas, with five thousand men met the vast Persian army at a narrow pass in the mountains.

This pass was called Thermopylæ, or Hot Gates, because of the hot springs there. If the Persians could capture this pass, they could pour their troops like a deluge over all Greece as far as Corinth.

Xerxes called on Leonidas to give up his arms. "Come and take them," was the reply of Leonidas. The Persians

declared they had so many archers that their arrows would darken the sun. "So much the better," answered the Spartan king, "we shall fight better in the shade."

For two days the Persians attacked the Greeks holding the narrow pass, but were driven back. A Greek traitor then showed the Persians a secret path which led over the mountain to the rear of the Greeks. Leonidas was told the Persians were coming down the mountain behind him. Knowing he could no longer defend the pass, Leonidas allowed all who wished to withdraw, but he refused to go away himself and held his place with three hundred devoted Spartan followers and a thousand other Greeks who also refused to retreat. They fought the Persians and were killed to the last man. Over their graves a monument was erected with these words: "Stranger, tell Sparta that we lie here in obedience to her laws."

The route to Athens was now open, and the Persians poured over the plain. Athens fell and was burned.

Persians Defeated at Salamis

In the meantime the great Persian fleet sailed round the Grecian peninsula to join the Persian land forces in possession of Athens. A small Greek fleet which had been built by Themistocles met them (480 B.C.) at Salamis, an island in front of the Athenian shore. The Persian king took his seat on a height to view the great victory which he thought he was going to win. The Grecians had placed their fleet in a narrow strait at Salamis; for only a small part of the Persian fleet could crowd into these narrow waters, and the Greeks could destroy the vessels one by one.

The plan worked out as the Greeks had expected. The vast fleet of the Persians crowded in the narrow strait was pretty nearly helpless, and the Greeks destroyed ship after ship. The Persian fleet, after an all-day battle, was at last defeated, and Xerxes hurried back to Asia.

The Greeks were not yet out of danger, however, for the Persian land forces were left under an able general named Mardonius. He withdrew into northern Greece. The next year he came down again, but at the battle of Platæa, twenty-five miles northwest of Athens, he was defeated and killed (479 B.C.). What was left of the Persian army retreated. The Athenians secured control of the Hellespont where the Persians had for ages crossed from Asia into Europe. Greece was now safe from further danger of a Persian invasion.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the battle of Thermopylæ.
2. What inscription marked the spot where the Spartans fell?
3. What effect on civilization did the Persian defeat have?

GREEK WAR CHARIOT

CHAPTER XIX

ATHENS AND SPARTA

Sparta rules Greece

About half a century after the final defeat of the Persians, war broke out between Athens and Sparta (431 B.C.). After the country about Athens had been ravaged many times by the Spartans the city of Athens itself fell, and her glory was at an end.

Sparta now became the ruler of Greece and ruled harshly for thirty-three years. Her own crimes brought her downfall. She treacherously seized the city of Thebes, and left Spartan soldiers to hold it.

The Thebans finally recovered the city by the cleverness of a Theban exile. He and five other brave young men dressed themselves as dancing girls, with veils over their faces. The Spartan leaders were holding an entertainment, and the dancing girls asked to be allowed to dance before them. Permission was given at once. In the midst of the dance the Thebans drew daggers from beneath their dresses and killed the Spartan leaders. The city now rose in revolt, and defeated the Spartans in battle. For a short time Thebes was the most powerful city in Greece.

Philip of Macedon

While the war between Athens and Sparta had been going on, a new power had been rising in the north in Macedonia. Although the Macedonians were of the same race

as the Greeks, they were rude and had little of the culture or the arts of the Greeks of Athens. They were therefore looked upon as barbarians by the southern Greeks. At this time the ruler of Macedonia was an able and active warrior named Philip. He built up a wonderful army, using a formation called the phalanx. In the phalanx the men were drawn up sixteen rows deep. The men were armed with spears. These spears were so long that those of the first five rows stuck out in front of the first line of men, and made a wall of iron which swept all before it as the men rushed forward supported by cavalry.

Philip desired to bring all Greece under his rule. To accomplish this, he captured the important Greek city of Olynthus, and thus gained control of the territory to the eastward as far as the Hellespont.

Demosthenes, the Patriot of Athens

At this time there lived in Athens a patriot named Demosthenes. As a boy he had determined to be a great orator, although he had few natural gifts. He stood by the seashore and declaimed above the roaring of the surf. He spoke with pebbles in his mouth to make his speech clearer. To secure a thorough knowledge of his native Greek language, he copied with great labor the books of famous Athenians. In this way he became one of the greatest orators in the world.

Demosthenes understood better than the other Athenians of his day what Philip was planning to do, and he delivered twelve powerful speeches to the Athenians in the hope of arousing the Grecians to the danger. These speeches are called Philippics. They are among the most famous orations in existence.

In spite of the utmost endeavors of Demosthenes the Greeks continued to quarrel with each other. Philip was glad to join in the quarrel, to get an excuse for attacking Athens and Thebes. In the battle of Chæronea the Greeks were overthrown (338 B.C.). This battle really marked the end of Greek independence, Philip being now master of almost the entire country. Where he could not at once conquer, he bribed. He said he had taken more towns with silver than with iron. Philip's son, Alexander, hearing every day of new victories won by his father, said to his playmates with a sigh, "My father will leave nothing for me to conquer."

Philip was proud of his position as king. He was once asked, as he was a very fast runner, if he would not like to enter the Olympic games. "Yes," he replied, "if I could have kings to race with."

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What great fault had the Greeks?

2. Compare the equipment of a Greek soldier with that of a modern soldier in khaki.

3. What was a phalanx? Why would it be useless now?

4. Find, on the map, Thebes, Macedonia, and Chæronea.

CHAPTER XX

PHILIP AND ALEXANDER

Alexander the Great

Philip gathered representatives of the Greek states at Corinth (337 B.C.), and placed before them plans for an attack on the Persians. He wished, he said, to punish the Persians for the wars they had waged against Greece a hundred and fifty years before. Almost all Greece responded with joy, and Philip was placed in command. Before he had perfected his plans, he was assassinated at the wedding feast of his daughter (336 B.C.).

Philip had a son, Alexander. On the day Alexander was born Philip received glad news from three different points. He heard that his general had won a great victory, that his horse had won at the Olympic games, and that a son had been born. The oracle said the son would be invincible, and for once the oracle told the truth.

Alexander's teacher was the great Aristotle, the most learned scholar of his day. Alexander was fond of horses and all kinds of athletic games. Aristotle taught him to love the literature of Greece, especially the Iliad, most of which he could recite from memory. To the young Alexander, Achilles was the greatest of heroes. Philip was so pleased with Aristotle's success with his son that he rebuilt Stagira, Aristotle's native town, which he himself had destroyed, and brought back the citizens, who had been sold into slavery.

According to a story, Alexander's father was presented with a very spirited horse named Bucephalus, a word which means oxhead. No one could ride him. Alexander asked his father for permission to do so. Philip was afraid the horse would kill the boy, and at first refused; but Alexander kept asking him for permission, and at last it was granted. Alexander noticed that the horse was afraid of his own shadow. He therefore turned the horse's head to the sun and suddenly sprang on his back. The horse tried in vain to shake him off. From that time he was Alexander's favorite horse. When Philip saw this, he said, "My son, seek a kingdom worthy of you. Macedonia is too small."

Alexander Master of Greece

On coming to the throne, at the age of twenty, Alexander had a serious problem before him. The Thracians rebelled, and the Thebans also. Without delaying a moment he marched into Thrace, which he crushed. He then hastened to Thebes, besieged the city, and captured it. He utterly destroyed it, and sold its inhabitants into slavery. The only house he spared was that of the poet Pindar. The fate of Thebes terrified the rest of Greece, and they submitted to Alexander.

On passing through Corinth Alexander heard of a philosopher named Diogenes who was said to live in a tub and went through the streets even in the daytime with a lantern. When asked why he did this, he replied he was looking for an honest man.

Alexander was so interested in what he heard of this peculiar old man that he went to see him. He found Diogenes in his tub and asked if he could do anything for

him. Diogenes at once replied, "Yes, stand out of my sunshine." Instead of being angry Alexander smiled and said to his attendants, "If I were not Alexander, I should wish to be Diogenes."

Alexander invades Asia

In the spring of 334 B.C. Alexander started on his expedition against Persia. With thirty thousand foot soldiers and four thousand cavalry he entered Asia Minor and went to Troy, where for some days he held games in honor of Achilles.

At Gordium he saw a skillfully tied knot which bound the pole of a chariot to the yoke. An oracle had declared that whoever untied the knot would become master of Asia. After trying in vain to untie it, Alexander drew his sword and cut it. "Now I have done it," he said; "let the oracle be fulfilled."

In the meantime some of the generals of Darius, king of Persia, had gathered an army at the Granicus River, to oppose Alexander's march. Alexander at once charged, crossed the river, and rushed up the muddy slopes of the opposite bank in the face of the Persian horde. The Persians for a time fought bravely, but the Macedonian phalanx plowed through their lines, which broke and fled with fearful loss of life.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Have you ever read the story of the fall of Troy?
2. How old was Alexander when he became king?
3. Tell the story of the Gordian knot.
4. Find Macedonia on the map.

CHAPTER XXI

ALEXANDER CONQUERS ASIA

Defeat of Darius

At Issus (333 B.C.) Alexander met the great King Darius himself in battle. The Persian king had an immense army. The country here was broken by mountain ridges, and the Persians could not use to advantage their large numbers or their cavalry. Darius was defeated, and his mother, wife, and daughters were taken prisoners. They were treated, however, with great kindness. Immense quantities of gold, silver, and jewels fell into Alexander's hands.

Alexander now pushed southward, captured Tyre, and led his army into Egypt, which quickly yielded to him. At the mouth of the Nile he founded Alexandria. This city was the meeting place of the East and the West and became a great center. Hither were brought the products of the world. With its great library, its schools, its university, Alexandria drew to it the most famous scholars.

Wherever he went Alexander founded cities at important points, no less than seventy having been built by him.

Alexander had, like his father, a high regard for the office of king. On one occasion, after Alexander had conquered a king, he asked him how he wished to be treated. The monarch, drawing himself up proudly, said, "Like a king." Alexander was so pleased with the response that he gave him back his kingdom.

THE EMPIRE OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

On his invasion of Egypt, Alexander had himself proclaimed as a god by the high priest of the temple of Jupiter Ammon. He ordered all to worship him as a deity by bowing down before him. When the Spartans heard of this, they answered with a smile, "Alexander can call himself a god—if he wishes."

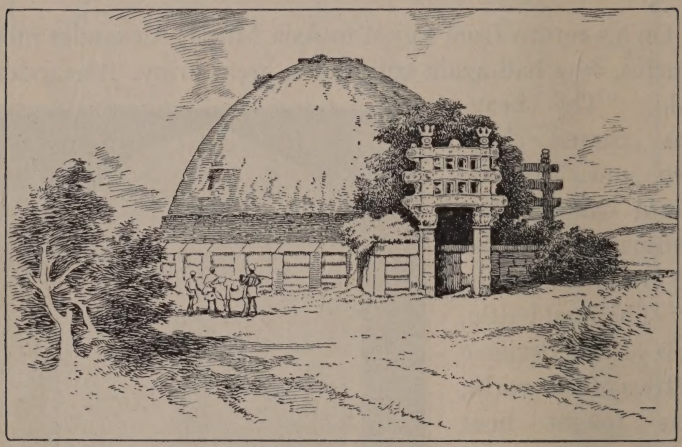
End of the Persian Empire

On his return from Egypt to Asia Minor, Alexander met Darius, who had again collected a great army. Alexander said, "The heavens cannot hold two suns, and the world cannot have two masters. It must be either Darius or I." The final battle, one of the decisive battles of the world, was fought near the small town of Arbela, not far from the old city of Nineveh. The Persian army was routed, and Darius fled. The Persian king was murdered by his own men, and the great Persian empire lay in ruins. Its vast treasures fell into the hands of Alexander, who, at the age of twenty-six, was king of Asia.

© Publishers' Photo Service, Inc.

A ROYAL TOMB IN INDIA

Eager to see the fabled rich land of India, Alexander led his army eastward till he reached the Caspian Sea. Going round this, he crossed Afghanistan, where he had to fight many severe battles. After two years he at last marched into India. Here, on the banks of the Indus River, he fought a successful battle, which opened the entire land to him. Here he saw the splendid temples and



SHRINE FOR RELICS OF THE BUDDHA

palaces which the native kings had been building up for four thousand years, many of which charm the traveler today.

The people here wove fabrics of cotton and silk, carved ivory, wood, and precious stones, and made beautiful gold ornaments.

Gotama, the Buddha

Three hundred years before Alexander's visit, there had lived here a religious teacher whose doctrines were destined to spread to all parts of the Eastern world. This

teacher was named Gotama; but he is generally called the Buddha, a name which means the enlightened. One day when Gotama was driving, he met a man broken down with age. At another time he saw a man suffering from an incurable disease. On another occasion he saw a dead body lying on the ground. He was so deeply moved by the suffering of the world that he gave up all his goods, left his wife and young child, and went into the desert. Later he returned to the neighborhood of Benares, where he sat under a fig tree, and became the Buddha, as he was now called. Many followers joined him, and a new religion bearing the name of Buddhism spread rapidly.

GOTAMA, THE BUDDHA

Break-up of Alexander's Empire

Alexander wished to push on into the rich valley of the Ganges River, but his troops refused to go. He was therefore compelled to return. When he reached Babylon, he suddenly died. Although he was only thirty-two years of age at his death, he had founded many cities, had brought

Greek culture to the East, and had conquered practically all the civilized world. He had never lost a battle. When he was dying, he was asked to whom he would leave his empire. He answered, "To the strongest." There was, however, no one strong enough to hold the vast territory, and soon after his death the great Grecian empire which he had founded went to pieces.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What decisive battle settled the fate of Asia?

2. How far east did Alexander go? Tell the effect on civilization of his invasion of Asia.

3. Who was the Buddha?

4. What became of Alexander's empire?

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

776 B.C. : First Olympic games.
490 B.C. : Battle of Marathon.
480 B.C. : Battle of Thermopylæ.
480 B.C. : Battle of Salamis.
479 B.C. : Battle of Platæa.
445–431 B.C. : Age of Pericles.
438 B.C. : Completion of the Parthenon.
431–404 B.C. : Peloponnesian War.
359–336 B.C. : Philip of Macedon.
336–323 B.C. : Alexander the Great.
331 B.C. : Founding of Alexandria.
332 B.C. : Battle of Arbela.

CHAPTER XXII

THE FOUNDING OF ROME

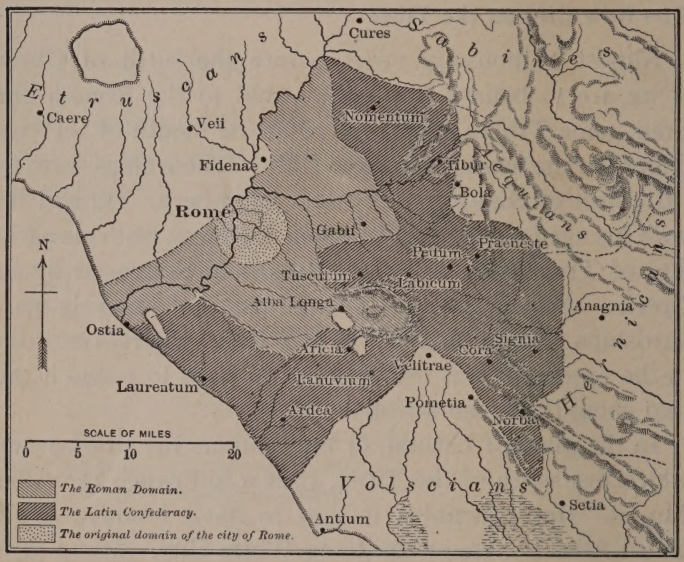
The New City on the Tiber

Almost a thousand years before the birth of Christ, if we are to believe the legends told to the Roman children, some Trojan ships arrived at the mouth of the river Tiber, on the western shore of Italy. These ships were the little fleet of Æneas, a famous Trojan hero. He had fled with his aged father and little son, Ascanius, from his native city of Troy when it was captured and destroyed by the Greeks. After wandering a long time, and suffering many hardships, Æneas finally reached Italy, where, according to the oracle, he was destined by the gods to found a race that should rule the world.

In the plain of Latium, or flat land, as the word means, which lies south of the Tiber, rises a hill called the Alban Mount. Here Ascanius is said to have founded a city called Alba Longa, or the Long White City. Many years later the rightful king, Numitor, a descendant of Ascanius, was driven from the throne by his brother, Amulius, who put to death Numitor's son and shut up his daughter, Rhea Silvia. After a time twin boys, Romulus and Remus, were born to this daughter, and an oracle foretold that these boys would put to death the cruel king Amulius.

Amulius, therefore, had them placed in a basket and thrown into the Tiber. The river had overflown its banks, and the basket, drifting down with the current, was

caught in the roots of a wild fig tree. A large wolf, which had lost her cubs, heard the cries of the children, and hurried to them. Instead of killing them, however, she nursed them. Their cries were heard by a shepherd who was caring for his sheep on a neighboring hill. He rescued the children and brought them up as his own.



THE ROMAN DOMAIN AND THE LATIN CONFEDERACY IN THE TIME OF THE EARLY REPUBLIC, ABOUT 450 B.C.

When the children grew up and found out who they really were, they killed the cruel king and replaced their grandfather on the throne. They decided to found a new city. Since some vultures, birds sacred to Jupiter, were seen to alight near the place where they had been rescued, they chose that spot as the site of their city. When they began to build the walls, they fell into a quarrel. Romulus

killed Remus, and became the first king of the new city, which he called Rome, after his own name.

The Latins in Italy

Italy is a land of great beauty and fertility. A long range of wooded mountains, called the Apennines, runs throughout the peninsula. On the north the towering Alps shut out the cold winds, and often warm breezes come from the great desert of Sahara on the south. The fields give ample food for horses, cattle, goats, and sheep. Wheat and barley could be easily raised, and the olive and fruit trees were very abundant. The site which Romulus and Remus selected for their city is of great interest, because for many centuries Rome was the capital of the world, and then became the head of Catholic Christendom.

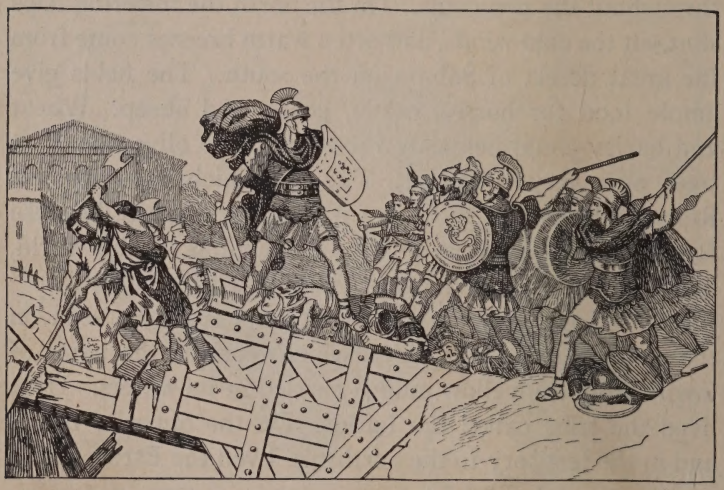
At first only a small cluster of huts could be seen on the south bank of the Tiber, which received the name of tawny from the yellow mud it carried in its waters. Here lived the tribe called the Latins. On the opposite banks and in the territory to the northwest lived the Etruscans.

The Story of Horatius

At one time in a war with the Latins an Etruscan army under Porsena came near the city of Rome. Porsena had captured all the outposts and now was approaching the wooden bridge that would admit him to Rome. Horatius Cocles, who was on guard that day at the bridge, called on his fellow soldiers to hold the bridge. With two companions he went to the farther side of the bridge, and ordered the soldiers to destroy the bridge behind him. While the timbers were being ripped up, Horatius and his companions fought the enemy. When the bridge was nearly

destroyed, he told his companions to return, and alone he faced the enemy. The bridge now fell with a crash, and Horatius, fully armed as he was, plunged into the Tiber amid a shower of spears, and safely reached the Roman shore.

The Romans erected a statue to Horatius, and gave him as much land as he could plow around in a day.



HORATIUS DEFENDING THE BRIDGE

After a time, however, the Etruscans secured control of the lands about the Tiber, and their kings ruled Rome for many years. They had learned much about art from the Greeks, for there were Greek cities in southern Italy. They brought to Rome many beautiful works made by Grecian sculptors and artists. They sought goods in Carthage, Egypt, and Phœnicia. They drained the swampy lands about Rome. They taught the Romans how to use the arch in building. They erected a wall to inclose the seven hills of Rome.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Look up the tale of Æneas.

2. Tell the story of Romulus and Remus.

3. Read the poem of Horatius at the bridge, in Macaulay's Lays of Ancient Rome.

4. On which side of Italy are the best harbors? How did this affect her history?

5. Find, on the map, the Tiber, Rome, the Apennines, Etruria.

A SCENE IN A ROMAN STREET

CHAPTER XXIII

THE RISE OF THE ROMAN REPUBLIC

The Curiatii and the Horatii

After a time war broke out between Rome and the mother city, Alba Longa. In the Alban army were three brothers who were strong, alert, and full of courage. They were called the Curiatii. In the Roman army were three brothers who were also strong and brave. They were named the Horatii. When the armies were about to begin fighting, it was decided to settle the contest by a battle between the Curiatii and the Horatii, instead of by a battle between the two armies.

The contest began. Two of the Horatii, the Roman youths, were soon killed. Only one was left to fight the three Curiatii, who had, however, received severe wounds. Horatius, the remaining brother, pretended to flee, and the Curiatii started in pursuit. Just as Horatius had believed, one of the Curiatii ran faster than his brothers and overtook Horatius, who quickly turned and killed him. The second brother he also killed when he came up. He now waited for the third brother. There was a sharp battle between them, but Horatius won, and the Albans were added to the Roman nation.

Founding of the Republic

About five hundred years before Christ, the Romans rose in revolt against the Etruscans. Tarquin the Proud,

who sat on the throne, was driven from the city. It was said that forever after the Romans hated the name of king. A republic was established, and two consuls were elected to rule. Their term was for one year only. The Romans chose two consuls instead of one, for they feared that if they had only one he might make himself king. The consuls wore long white robes bordered with purple, and no one else could wear this type of dress. To aid the consuls, a senate was appointed, made up largely of old men. The word "senate" is derived from the same Latin root as the word for old man (*senex*). In times of great national danger an officer called a dictator was appointed. He had absolute power while he held this office. As soon as the danger had passed, he gave up the office.

Patricians and Plebeians

The noble and wealthy Romans were called patricians. They alone could be consuls and senators, and they held all the offices in the state.

The poorer people were called plebeians. They had no power or influence. They claimed that as the laws were not written, the patricians changed them whenever it was for their advantage to do so. The plebeians asked for a share in the government and for written laws, but the patricians refused to listen to them. Thereupon the plebeians revolted, and left the city.

This action frightened the patricians, who wished the plebeians to work and to fight for them; and so they quickly yielded. Officers called tribunes were elected to look after the welfare of the plebeians. A tribune sat at the door of the Senate, and if a law was passed which he felt injured the plebeians he cried out, "Veto" (I forbid).

This at once did away with the law. Later the plebeians had an assembly, where they took part in making the laws. At last the laws were written out, on twelve bronze tablets, which were called the Twelve Tables. Every Roman schoolboy learned them by heart.

The Romans now began to spread out. They had learned many things from the Greeks, whose ships came into the Tiber loaded with goods for the people of Italy. The Romans, however, were wiser than the Greeks in their methods of colonizing. They not only built good roads to unite their colonies with Rome, but allowed the people in the colonies a large share in managing their own affairs. They protected them against enemies, and granted them at times the great boon of Roman citizenship.

By these methods the Romans won the good will of their colonists. This was very important, because the people in the lands conquered by Rome, even if far distant, generally supported Rome whenever an enemy attacked her, and they were ever loyal to their mother city on the Tiber.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the contest between the Horatii and Curiatii.
2. Why did the Romans hate the name of king?
3. Give the meanings of the following words: "senate," "patrician," and "plebeian."
4. Why did the plebeians finally win?
5. What was the tribune of the people?
6. Explain the word "veto."
7. What were the laws of the Twelve Tables?
8. How did the Romans govern their colonies?

CHAPTER XXIV

ROME CONQUERS ALL ITALY

Coming of the Gauls

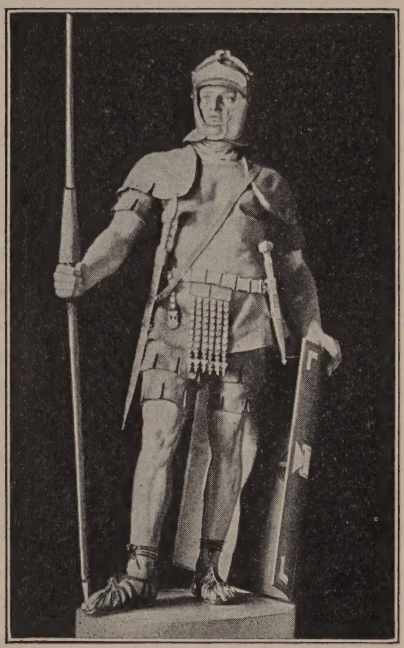
The Romans invaded Etruria and conquered all the territory near Rome. They were soon able to control a large area in central Italy. The equipment of a Roman soldier was made up of shield, spear, and short sword. When charging the enemy, he hurled his spear, and then rushed at the foe with his sword. He was very brave, and would gladly suffer death to win a battle.

Great dangers were in store for the Romans. Beyond the Alps, in what is now France, lived a powerful people whom the Romans called Gauls. The Gauls were of great height, with yellow hair and flashing blue eyes. They wore at times a sort of helmet, and beneath this their streaming hair, tied in a knot, hung over their shoulders. They were at times clothed in skins, and at times in striped garments. They carried heavy blunted swords.

Since the Gauls believed that the souls of brave warriors passed into other and stronger bodies, they did not hesitate to rush to death in battle. They fought without any plan of battle, rushing pell-mell with yells and cries upon the terrified enemy. The women were as brave as the men, and often fought beside them in war. They were tall, strong, and handsome.

The Gauls believed that there were gods in the sun and moon, in the trees of the forest, and in the rivers. Their

priests were called druids and their religious services were held in oak forests, as the oak was believed to be a sacred tree. At times the druids offered human sacrifices.



ROMAN SOLDIER

The Phœnicians had traded with the Gauls at the mouth of the river Rhone, and the Greeks came there also. According to an interesting story, a Greek trader was invited to a great feast given by a Gallic chief in honor of his daughter. During the feast the beautiful girl came in with a goblet of wine. If she handed the goblet to anyone present, it was a sign that she chose him as her husband. Walking up to the Greek guest, she handed him the cup, and they were happily married. They settled there and built up a Greek colony, which is the present city of Marseille.

The Gauls capture Rome

In early times some of the Gauls had crossed the Alps and settled in northern Italy. While the Romans were conquering Etruria, these Gauls were devastating the lands of central Italy. They were able to defeat a Roman

army that was sent against them. They captured and burned a large part of Rome (390 B.C.). When the Gallic soldiers poured into the Forum, in the heart of Rome, they saw the aged senators, clad in white togas, sitting in their ivory chairs holding wands or staffs in their hands. These staffs were the emblems of their high office. Not a senator spoke a word. A Gaul drew near and stroked a senator's flowing beard. At this insult, as he considered it, the senator struck him with his staff. The Gauls then killed the senators, plundered the houses and temples, and set fire to the buildings. The flames spread far and wide, destroying most of the city.

The Capitol of Rome, however, in the highest part of the city, was still uncaptured, for the hill was steep and well defended. The Gauls, thinking to take it by a trick, crawled up the rocky sides in the night. The Romans kept sacred geese in the Capitol. As the Gauls silently drew near the summit of the rock in the darkness, the geese began to cackle. The Roman soldiers ran to the spot, and the Capitol was saved.

The Gauls withdrew from Rome when they had been paid a large sum of gold. A story is told that they demanded a thousand pounds of gold. The Romans complained that they were not weighing it correctly. Thereupon Brennus, the Gallic leader, in anger cried out, "Woe to the vanquished!" and threw his belt and sword into the scales. The Romans had to pay for the extra weight. According to another story, just at this time Camillus, the dictator, came up with his army, and crying out, "Rome is ransomed by steel, not by gold," drove out the Gauls.

Another people, named the Samnites, who lived in central Italy, tried to prevent the Romans from controlling

the whole country. War broke out and lasted for thirty years, resulting in the complete defeat of the Samnites.

Defeat of Pyrrhus

The Greek cities in southern Italy now called on a Greek king, named Pyrrhus, to come and help them, for they feared the Romans would soon conquer them also. Pyrrhus came with his army and twenty elephants. The elephants so frightened the Roman horses that they turned and fled. Pyrrhus twice defeated the Romans; but he lost so many men that he is said to have cried out, "One more such victory and I am undone." Since that time a victory which is almost as bad as a defeat has been called a Pyrrhic victory. Pyrrhus soon returned to Greece, and the Romans quickly took all the Greek cities of Italy under their rule. The whole Italian peninsula was now in the hands of the Romans.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the equipment of a Roman soldier?
2. What modern country did the ancient Gauls inhabit?
3. Who were the druids? What was their sacred tree?
4. Tell the legend of the founding of Marseille.
5. When was Rome captured by the Gauls?
6. What does a Pyrrhic victory mean?

CHAPTER XXV

ROME AGAINST CARTHAGE

Rise of Carthage

Unlike the Greeks, who lived for their own little city-states, the Romans longed for world power. A little southwest of Italy, on the coast of Africa one hundred miles from Rome, a great trading city called Carthage had been built. It had been founded by the Phœnicians eight hundred and fifty years before Christ. Its vessels could be seen in all parts of the Mediterranean, and they sailed along the coasts of Europe as far north as Britain.

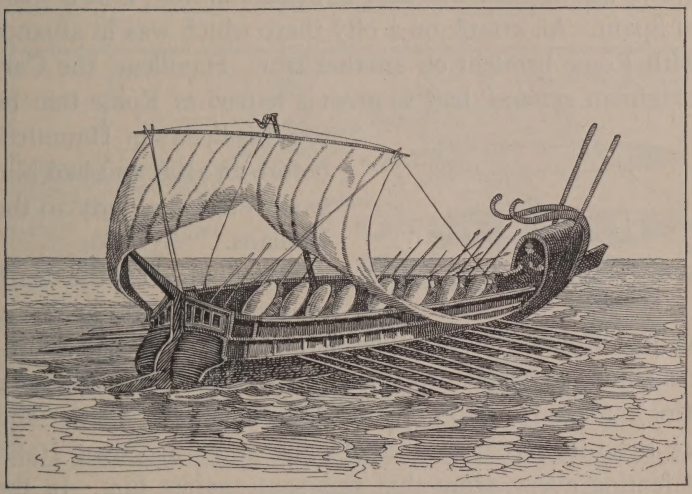
When the Romans began to seek trade beyond Italy, they met the Carthaginians, and great rivalry sprang up between them. All the island of Sicily was in the hands of the Carthaginians except a small strip along the eastern coast, on which was situated the Greek city of Syracuse. In a dispute between Syracuse and Carthage the Romans were glad to interfere. They landed an army in Sicily, on the pretext that they were anxious to aid Syracuse. Just as they hoped, this act caused war to break out between Rome and Carthage. It received the name of the First Punic War.

The Carthaginians believed that their heavy vessels with five banks of oars instead of three, which the Greeks used, would easily defeat the Roman ships. The Carthaginians generally drove their sharp-beaked ships into the enemy's ships, which quickly sank, or they planned to

ANCIENT ITALY, SICILY
AND
CARTHAGE
ENGLISH MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100
6° 8° Longitude 10° East from 12° Paris 14° 16°
8° 10° Longitude 12° East from 14° Greenwich 16°
46° 44° 42° 40° 38° 36°
Alps
Alps
CISALPINA
VENETIA
Venice
Po R.
LIGURIA
Genoa
APENNINES
ADRIATIC SEA
ILLYRIA
UMBRIA
PICENUM
ETRURIA
(Etruscans)
CORSICA
Sabines
Rome
Tiber R.
LATIUM
Latins
Volscians
SAMNIUM
Samnites
Capua
Neapolis (Naples)
Vesuvius
Pompeii
APULIA
Brundisium
CALABRIA
Tarentum
Paestum
LUCANIA
BRUTTII
SARDINIA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Panormus
Mount Aetna
SICILY
Tauromenium (Taormina)
Agrigentum
Syracuse
Carthage
AFRICA

dash along the side and break the oars, which would of course render the ships quite helpless.

The Roman engineers, however, worked out a new plan of attack. They built on each ship a bridge which could be let down like the drawbridge over the moat of an ancient castle, or like the drawbridge which we raise and



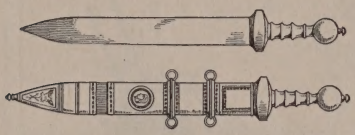
ROMAN BATTLESHIP

lower over a small river. In the first sea fight, at Mylæ, off the north coast of Sicily (260 B.C.), the Romans avoided the sharp beaks of the Carthaginian vessels, and getting alongside, suddenly dropped the drawbridges on the enemy's ships. The Roman soldiers, rushing across with their short swords, with which they were so expert, quickly killed the Carthaginians. It was a complete victory for Rome, which had built its navy by copying a Carthaginian vessel wrecked on the coast of Italy.

After twenty-four years of warfare, peace was made. Carthage was obliged to give up her territory in Sicily, to pay Rome a large sum of money, and to surrender her fleet.

Hamilcar and Hannibal

Peace lasted for twenty-two years. Carthage had again grown strong, and was able to seize and hold a large part of Spain. An attack on a city there which was in alliance with Rome brought on another war. Hamilcar, the Carthaginian general, had so great a hatred of Rome that he took his little son, Hannibal, before an altar and had him swear eternal enmity to the Romans.



ROMAN SWORDS

Hannibal, after the death of his father, led an army against Rome. He marched across Spain, through southern Gaul (as France was then called), and over the snowy Alps into Italy. He defeated the Romans in battle, and for seventeen years marched back and forth over Italy, defeating every army that was sent against him. In the battle of Cannæ he killed so many Roman knights that the rings he took from their fingers filled a peck measure.

Hannibal was never able, however, to capture the city of Rome, for her allies stood firm, and her Senate refused to consider terms of peace while the Carthaginians were in Italy. Hannibal's brother, Hasdrubal, now came from Spain with a new army. Crossing the Alps, he turned southward, and sent word to Hannibal to join him. Hannibal did not receive the message. The messengers were captured by the Romans, who took advantage of the news. Gathering their forces, and hurrying north to the Metau-

rus River, they defeated and killed Hasdrubal (207 B.C.), and sent his head to Hannibal.

The Romans raised another army, and soon felt strong enough to invade Africa. They attacked Carthage with great force. Hannibal was recalled to defend his native land. He was defeated at Zama, not far from Carthage (202 B.C.). Peace was made between Carthage and Rome.

THE ROUTE OF HANNIBAL

Fifty-three years later war was again resumed. Finally, one hundred and forty-six years before Christ, Carthage was captured, and the beautiful city, with its palaces, houses, and ships, after burning for more than two weeks, was completely destroyed.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Give the reason for the outbreak of war between Rome and Carthage.

2. Describe the first great Roman naval victory.

3. What oath did Hannibal take for his father?

4. Trace the route of Hannibal from Spain to Italy.

5. What was the result of the wars between Rome and Carthage?

6. The war vessels of the Phœnicians, Greeks, Romans, and Carthaginians were largely driven by men working at the oars. How are the war vessels of today driven?

ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH

CHAPTER XXVI

JULIUS CÆSAR

The Youth of Cæsar

About half a century after the destruction of Carthage, there was born in Rome (102 B.C.) a man who was destined to secure for himself the foremost place in the Roman world. That man was Julius Cæsar. At that time there were two leading parties in Rome, the aristocratic, led by the nobility, and the democratic or popular party made up of the majority of the citizens. The ruling power was in the hands of the Senate, which was composed of six hundred members.

Cæsar belonged to one of the aristocratic families which claimed to be descended from Æneas of Troy; but although of noble birth, Cæsar was in sympathy with the popular party. His uncle Marius was the leader of that party, and for a time had been dictator or absolute ruler of Rome.

The leader of the aristocratic or senatorial party was Sulla. Not only had there been frequent riots between the parties, when the streets ran red with blood, but each side, on coming into power, put to death its leading opponents.

Cæsar received a good education in both law and military tactics in Rome, Rhodes, and Asia Minor. He was unusually ambitious. He believed in his youthful days that more rights should be given to the people, and he was therefore opposed to the absolute rule of the Senate.

Sulla ordered Cæsar to divorce his young wife. Cæsar, though only eighteen years of age, refused to do so. This would usually have meant his execution, for Sulla, as dictator, had the power of life and death in his hands. For some reason, probably because of influential friends, Sulla spared him, saying with a shake of his head as he did so, "I see in that young man many a Marius."

On the Road to the Consulship

Cæsar's ambition was to enter the Senate, and at last to gain the consulship, the highest position in Rome. Before he could become a senator, he had to be chosen for four or five other high offices. His first office was that of military tribune. At the age of thirty-two he was elected quæstor. This officer collected the money raised from all sources for the Roman treasury.

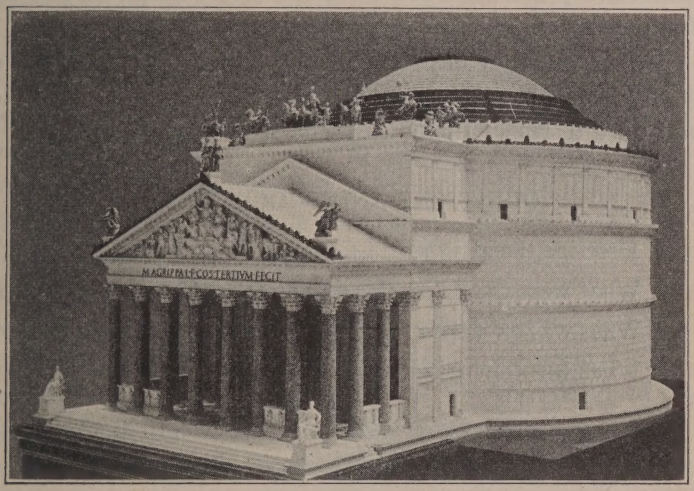
JULIUS CÆSAR

Cæsar's next position was that of ædile. He now had the control of the public buildings, the care of the streets and markets, the direction of commerce and trade, and the promotion of public festivals and games, of which the Romans were very fond.

By holding many of these games on a large scale, the ædiles sought to win the favor of the people. The spectacles and shows which Cæsar arranged were the greatest

Rome had ever seen. These games cost Cæsar so much that he was a million dollars in debt when his term of office expired, according to the stories told in Rome.

Cæsar now became a candidate for the position of Pontifex Maximus or chief priest of the Pontifical College. There was so active a contest for this position that Cæsar



THE ROMAN PANTHEON

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

said to his mother on leaving home the morning of the voting: "Tonight I shall be either Pontifex Maximus or an exile." He was elected, however, and in this office directed the religious affairs of Rome. This office he held for life.

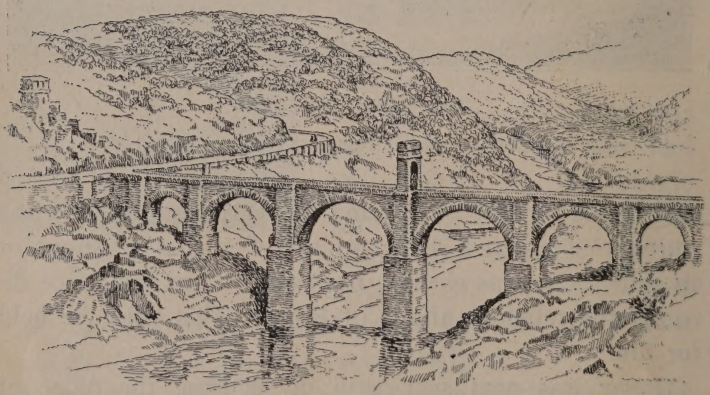
Cæsar was next successful in securing the office of prætor, or supreme judge. With his seven associates he directed the administration of justice. When a prætor's

term expired, he was usually appointed as governor of one of the Roman provinces. This was usually an office where great wealth could be easily obtained. It was said one year was enough to allow a Roman governor to return in wealth. Cæsar secured the rich province of Spain. He was successful there in his military campaigns, and after two years returned to Rome rich enough to pay all his debts.

Cæsar was now elected consul (59 B.C.). He proposed many laws for the benefit of the people. The Senate did not dare to reject them, although it wished to do so.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the early life of Cæsar.
2. What were the political parties in Rome?
3. What was an ædile? a prætor? the Pontifex Maximus?
4. What was the highest office in Rome?



OLD ROMAN BRIDGE IN SPAIN

CHAPTER XXVII

CÆSAR IN GAUL

The Conquest of Gaul

When Cæsar's term as consul expired, he secured the governorship of Gaul, a province which included what is now France, Belgium, and Holland, and parts of Switzerland and Germany. It was a country of rugged mountains, dark forests, fortified towns, cultivated fields, and tangled swamps, where the strong and hardy Gallic and German tribes were in constant strife. Rome feared that these tribes might begin a march southward, and the Senate gladly saw Cæsar depart on his dangerous mission.

For eight years Cæsar carried on his campaigns in Gaul, and even went into Germany and to Britain. He told the story of his marches, sieges, and battles in his Commentaries on the Gallic War, which he wrote at the time, often at night by the flickering light of the camp fire. He trained his legions of soldiers until they were the best in the world, built bridges, erected forts, defeated nation after nation, kept his army in good health and spirits, and always led his soldiers himself, even in the posts of the greatest danger.

The noblest chief Cæsar met was Vercingetorix, who after many victories was at last surrounded in the city of Alesia. To save his troops, Vercingetorix rode into Cæsar's camp and surrendered. He was brought in chains to Rome, to appear in the great triumphal procession of

Cæsar. At its close he was put to death. On the site of Alesia the French have erected a large statue to Vercingetorix, whom they regard as a national hero.

The Romans in Britain

Cæsar's campaigns in Britain did little more than open the way for its later conquest, for at his approach the Britains fled to their strongholds in the marshes and forests. About a hundred years later, however, the Romans came with many soldiers and conquered most of the island.

CONSUL AND GUARDS

Under their emperor Hadrian they erected, at the border of Scotland, a wall seventy miles long across the country from sea to sea. This wall was twenty feet high and seven feet wide. It was protected with guardhouses, situated at short distances from one another, so that signals could be given in case of a sudden attack. The wall was built to keep the Scots and Picts from invading the Roman province. The Romans built beautiful houses, baths, and splendid roads. For three hundred and fifty years they ruled the country. Even today many Roman remains may be seen, some of them in an excellent state of preservation after centuries.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe Cæsar's conquest of Gaul.

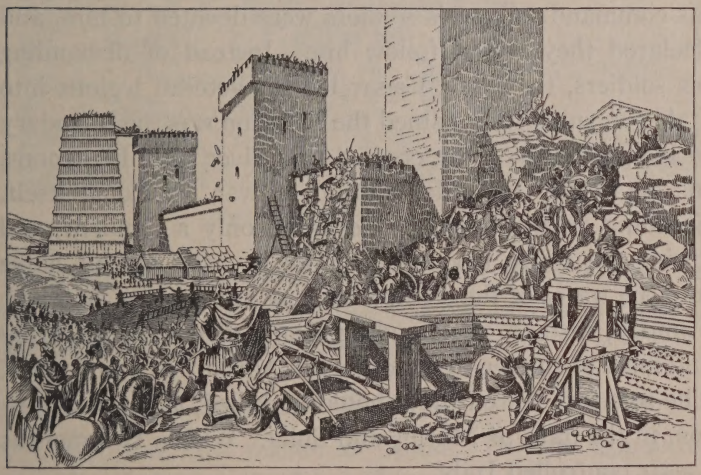
2. Who was Vercingetorix? What became of him?

3. What did Cæsar accomplish in Britain?

4. What modern country comprises a large part of Gaul?

5. With all his power it required a week for Cæsar to get a message from Geneva to Rome. Now a message from the same place can reach Rome in five minutes. Explain the difference.

6. Except on coins there are few pictures of Cæsar. Why have not many pictures of him been handed down to us?



ROMANS ATTACKING A CITY

CHAPTER XXVIII

CÆSAR THE RULER OF THE WORLD

Cæsar defeats Pompey

After eight years of victorious warfare in Gaul, Cæsar made plans to return to Rome. Pompey was at that time consul. He had become jealous of Cæsar's victories, and at his wish the Senate sent orders to Cæsar to give up his command. Cæsar's soldiers were devoted to him, and declared they would follow him. Instead of disbanding his soldiers, therefore, Cæsar led his veteran legions into Italy. A small river named the Rubicon was the boundary of his province. If he crossed that river with his troops, his act would be a declaration of war on Rome itself. Standing on the bank, he hesitated only a moment, and crying out to his troops, "The die is cast," led his horse into the water of the shallow stream, and hurried forward. Pompey, instead of defending Rome, fled with his army and most of the senators across the Adriatic Sea to Greece. The senators feared they should be killed, as was the custom in the days of Marius and Sulla. Within two months Cæsar controlled Italy.

Since Cæsar had no ships, he could not at once follow Pompey to Greece, but he acted quickly as usual. There was a large Roman army in Spain, under some of Pompey's leaders. Cæsar hurried thither. In passing through one of the small Spanish towns, his aides remarked that life in such a miserable village must be dreary indeed. Cæsar

replied, "I would rather be first in that village than second in Rome." His victorious legions soon defeated Pompey's army, and Spain, Gaul, Italy, Sardinia, and Sicily were now in his hands. Securing transports, he carried

CÆSAR CROSSING THE RUBICON

his thirty thousand soldiers across the Adriatic Sea. He defeated Pompey at Pharsalus (48 B.C.). Pompey fled to Egypt, but was killed when he was landing.

Cæsar Ruler of the Roman World

Cæsar was now master of Rome. He was appointed consul and dictator for life. He was clad in purple robes, and his likeness was stamped on the Roman coins.

Cæsar erected beautiful buildings in the city, built new roads, allowed the Gauls to sit in the Senate, and gave to them and to the people of other provinces the rights of Roman citizenship. He built up, as the capital of Gaul, the city of Lyons. The Gauls began to speak Latin,

and established excellent schools. The Latin language as spoken by the Gauls gradually changed, and became what is today called French.

In the early days of his dictatorship Cæsar made a change in the calendar. The Roman calendar had been based on the movement of the moon, and was therefore called a lunar year, from the Latin word *luna*, meaning moon. The solar or sun year differs from the lunar year by being about eleven days longer. The difference between the lunar and the solar year had produced so great an error in the calendar that the seasons were three months out of place. Spring began in winter, summer in spring, autumn in the summer, and winter in autumn.

AUGUSTUS CÆSAR

Cæsar adopted the more correct sun year, making his year consist of three hundred and sixty-five days divided into twelve months. Each fourth year was to have three hundred and sixty-six days. The Roman year began in March, as shown by the names September (seventh month), October (eighth month), and so forth. In honor of Cæsar the name of the fifth month (Quintilis) was changed to Julius (July). When Augustus Cæsar came

to the throne, he ordered the name of the sixth month (Sextilis) to be changed to Augustus (August) after himself, and to satisfy his vanity he took a day from February and added it to August; for he did not wish Cæsar's month to have more days than his own. This is why every other month of our calendar, beginning with January, does not have thirty-one days (as Julius Cæsar planned it).

By Cæsar's calendar the year was eleven minutes and fourteen seconds too long. In the course of centuries this would again make a difference in the seasons. In 1582, when the difference was ten days, Pope Gregory the Thirteenth corrected the calendar by calling the fifth of October the fifteenth and declaring that years marking the centuries should not be leap years unless divisible by four hundred (instead of by four, which marks other leap years). The Gregorian calendar has been finally accepted by nearly all the world. The calendar is now so exact that the error will not amount to a day in three thousand years.

Death of Cæsar; Augustus

Before Cæsar could carry out all his wonderful plans and reforms, he was assassinated, at the age of fifty-six, by conspirators, led by Cassius and Brutus. They believed he was planning to make himself king.

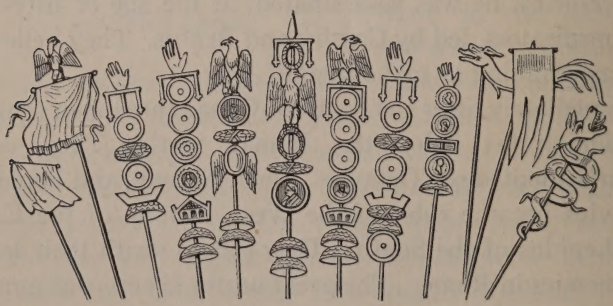
Immediately after the death of Cæsar three men (called a triumvirate) ruled the Roman world. They were Cæsar's adopted son Octavius, Mark Antony, and Lepidus. Octavius became ruler of the West, Antony of the East, and Lepidus of the South. They put to death their leading enemies in Rome. The great orator Cicero was among the slain, as he had been an opponent of Antony.

The three rulers soon quarreled. Lepidus resigned, and Octavius and Antony gathered forces to secure sole control. Octavius defeated Antony in a naval battle (31 B.C.) off Actium, in Greece, and became the ruler of the Roman world.

Octavius had command of the army and navy, and the Senate was anxious to do exactly as he wished. He was appointed imperator or emperor for ten years. To keep up the old ideas about the power that should rest in the hands of the Roman people and Senate, he resigned his power at the end of that time. They at once reëlected him. He was now so powerful that he became emperor for life. When he went out in his chariot, flowers were strewn in his path. He was hailed not only as an emperor, but as a divine person. He was now called Augustus, a name up to this time applied only to the gods. He is generally called Augustus Cæsar, or simply Augustus.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. How did Cæsar become master of Rome?
2. What was the fate of Pompey?
3. Describe the death of Cæsar.



ROMAN MILITARY STANDARDS

CHAPTER XXIX

THE AUGUSTAN AGE

The Era of Augustus Cæsar

Augustus ruled for forty years. There was peace throughout the Roman world, which now extended from the Atlantic Ocean to India. The strong arm of the government protected its citizens to the farthermost places of the world. "I am a Roman citizen" was not only a proud boast, but a sure protection.

ROMAN STANDARD-BEARER

Never before had such an era of peace existed in the world, for the warring tribes and nations were now under the strong hand of Augustus Cæsar. Spain, Gaul, Britain, Carthage, Egypt, Syria, Palestine, and Persia, some of which were formerly great nations, were now merely provinces of the Roman Empire. The Mediterranean Sea had become in reality a Roman lake.

Once, however, Augustus suffered a defeat, when in the ninth year of the Christian Era he attempted to extend the work of Cæsar in Gaul and to build a new frontier. He sent his general Varus into the forests beyond the Rhine, to drive

back the Germans to the Elbe River. The German leader, Hermann, gathered his followers together and routed the Romans. In despair Varus killed himself. Hermann returned in triumph, and has ever since been held by the Germans as the national hero.

When Augustus heard of the defeat, he walked up and down his palace halls beating his breast and crying,

RETURN OF THE VICTORIOUS GERMANS

"Varus, Varus, give me back my legions." The result of this victory was that the Danube and the Rhine became the northern boundary of the Roman power, and the German peoples followed their own mode of living without regard to Rome. Their language became the basis of the German, Dutch, and English languages of today.

The Glory of Rome

While conquering so much of the world, the Romans had seized the treasures, statuary, and valuable goods of

the cities they captured, and brought them back to Rome. They brought back the captured citizens also, who became slaves. Some of these slaves were cultured scholars of Greece, and they were used as teachers for the Roman children. The avenues of Rome were lined with palaces; beautiful temples were erected; great circuses were built to amuse the citizens with games; and food was often given free to the people. The world had never seen luxury such as that of Rome in the days of Augustus. Poets sang of the wonderful deeds of the Roman soldiers, and rulers and orators aroused the citizens with their glowing pictures of the greatness of the Roman state.

CHIEF ROMAN ROADS

To all parts of the world, so far as it was at that time known, Roman ships carried Roman merchants, and brought back to Rome the goods from the outlying provinces. Grain ships, protected by patrol fleets, came to Rome in an endless procession from Egypt, Spain, India, and the regions bordering on the Black Sea. Even from Britain and the Baltic lands ships were constantly on the way to the Eternal City. Trade routes by land led over the passes of the Alps. The Roman roads were so well built that some have lasted to this day. They led from the capital to the most distant places. The Appian Way was the most ancient as well as the most noble. It was called the queen of highways. It ran from Rome to Capua. As a base it had cement; on this was gravel, pounded down, and on the gravel was a surface of pointed

stones. Along the main highways relays of at least forty horses were provided every six miles and imperial messengers could travel quickly to the most distant provinces.

The Latin Language; Roman Homes

The language of the Romans was Latin, which we can study and read today. From the Latin have come the

THE APPIAN WAY IN CÆSAR'S TIME

French, Italian, Portuguese, and Spanish languages. We have very many Latin words in English. Many of the Romans spoke Greek also, and made frequent journeys to the cities of Greece. The Romans listened with the greatest pleasure to Greek plays, and filled their homes with Greek books. The books were rolls made of papyrus. These books were of course written by hand, for printing had not been invented. Gradually the Latin language received many Greek words.

A ROMAN HOME

The home of a wealthy Roman was very luxurious. The bronze door was opened by a slave. Inside was a hall, called the atrium, which had an opening in the ceiling to admit light and air. Frequently a pool stood here which was filled with rain water from the roof. There were several small rooms opening into this larger room.

ROMAN BOY

Just beyond the atrium, separated from it by doors or hangings, was another large room open directly to the sky. In the center was a fountain from which poured out clear water. Along the walls were plants and statues and altars. A colonnade with beautiful Corinthian columns of white Carrara or Grecian colored marble extended round the room. Smaller rooms led from the colonnade.

A ROMAN TOGA

The floor was generally of marble mosaic, on which lay beautiful rugs. The walls were of marble or stucco, painted in brilliant colors. The ceilings were gilded. There were few windows, the light coming in from the open roof. When there were windows, they were protected by shutters and hangings. Charcoal braziers were in general use for heating.

Roman Dress; Customs

The Roman dress consisted of an undershirt, generally with short sleeves, over which a light garment was worn. This was for the house. When the Roman went out, he used the toga, which was a white or colored woolen garment. It enveloped the body and was then thrown over the shoulder. On long journeys or in bad weather a mantle was used for protection and warmth.

On his feet the Roman wore sandals, which were held on the feet by thongs. One of these thongs passed between the great and the second toe and then around

ROMAN SHOES

the ankle. At a banquet the sandals were removed by the slaves as soon as the owner reclined on the couch. The Roman used shoes also, which reached just above the ankle and were laced in front.

The Roman reclined on a couch for his meals. There were highly polished tables upon which slaves placed the food. Forks were unknown, but spoons and probably knives were in use. The dishes were at first made of pottery, but later, in the days of luxury and wealth, silver and gold dishes came into use. Beautiful cedar tables displayed the wealth of bowls, vases, beakers, and cups, in which the owner took great pride.

Bronze lamps of beautiful workmanship fed by oil stood about the room. They were at times five or six

feet high. In spite of their cost, they gave a very unsatisfactory light. A Roman entering one of our rooms brightly lighted by electricity would think himself in fairyland.

In the library were rolls of parchment or papyrus. On each was a label giving the name of the author and the

A ROMAN DINING COUCH

title of the book. Educated slaves were used frequently to copy the precious manuscripts as well as to teach.

The Roman had no clock, but measured time by the sundial and water clock. The day, which was reckoned from sunrise to sunset, was divided into twelve equal parts, or hours. The night, from sunset to sunrise, was also divided into twelve equal parts. Since the day was much longer in summer than in winter, the divisions, or hours

varied greatly; at the summer solstice, in June, each hour of the day would be thirty-one minutes longer than in winter. On account of the poor lighting system the night in Rome was rather dreary.

The Day of a Roman Citizen

The Roman school began very early, in winter before daybreak. All Rome apparently rose very early. Even the wealthy Roman was up before daybreak. He took a light breakfast. Soon thereafter appeared at his home friends and clients. The clients were of various types. Some were looking for his influence to secure positions under the government, others sought loans of money, others were poets, and still others came in the hope of securing some good meals. When the influential and wealthy Roman went out of his house, these clients went along with him to the Forum. Many Romans took great pride in the number of clients at their heels, since it indicated wealth and influence with the emperor.

ROMAN SCHOOLBOY'S WAX-COVERED BOARD AND PENCIL, USED FOR WRITING AND ARITHMETIC

The Roman going to the Forum visited, perhaps, the courts, which were held in the morning. If a senator, he went to the Senate House. He might also visit his banker or doctor, or listen to some address given on Roman affairs from the rostra in the Forum. Luncheon was served about eleven o'clock, and this was followed by a nap dur-

ing the hot hours of the day, when the Forum was well-nigh deserted on account of the intense heat.

After his midday rest the Roman went to the Campus Martius for exercise. This exercise was made up of boxing, fencing, wrestling, and playing ball. He now took a hot and cold bath, and sat about on the marble seats, conversing with his fellows. Dinner was served at four or five o'clock. At the dinner there were many elaborate courses, with reading, conversation, music, dancing, and other forms of entertainment. The dinner often lasted three or four hours. As a rule, the Roman retired early.

The Theater

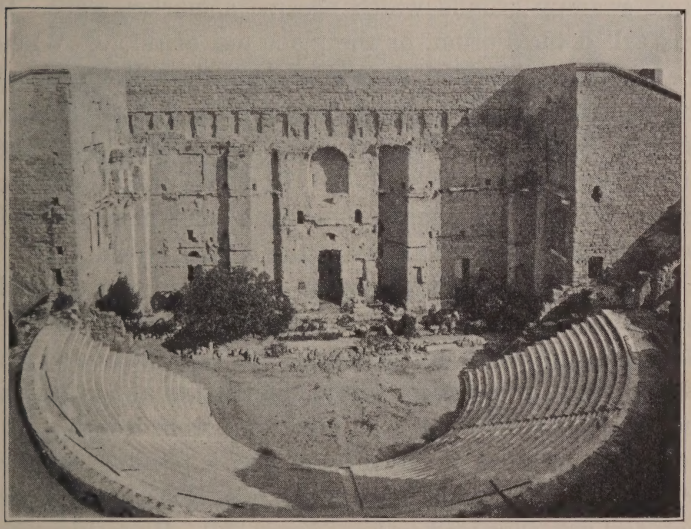
The Roman theater was a modification of the Greek theater, with stone benches for the people. The orchestra, which in the Greek theater had been open for an altar and the use of the chorus, was now filled with seats; for the Romans did not have a chorus. The plays were presented on a rather narrow stage. Behind the stage was a wall which was sometimes decorated. Awnings were spread above to shield the people from the hot Italian sun.

An actor came before the people at the beginning of the play and told them the plot, so that they could know what to expect. The actors wore colored wigs instead of masks. In Rome slaves were often used for actors.

While the wealthy Romans lived in luxury, the poor lived in cheap, cold, damp houses. As wages were very low, it was difficult for the poorer citizens to keep from want. They looked eagerly therefore for the free grain given by the emperors, and for the free entertainments. By these spectacles the emperors for long years kept the people somewhat contented.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What great defeat did the Romans suffer in Germany?
2. Describe, briefly, Rome in the time of Augustus.
3. What modern languages have come from the Latin?
4. Describe the home of a wealthy Roman.
5. How did the Romans dress?
6. Tell about the Roman highways.



RUINS OF A ROMAN THEATER

CHAPTER XXX

THE FORUM

The Heart of Rome

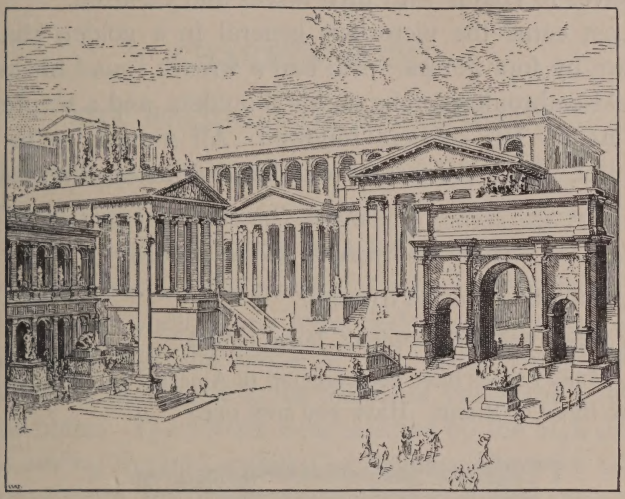
In the midst of the hills of Rome in the early days was a large swampy ground which became a market place. It was called the Forum, or the place out of doors. When the swamp was drained, a street was put through it, named the Sacred Way. Beautiful temples, the Senate House, and the Hall of Justice were built here. Here, also, the public speakers addressed the Romans; and lawyers, money lenders, merchants, statesmen, and generals met here and discussed the affairs of the Roman world.

The Forum was the heart of Rome and was looked upon by the Romans as the central point of all the world. Here Augustus Cæsar set up the Golden Milestone on which were carved the distances to the chief towns and cities on the great roads that led in all directions from Rome.

At one entrance to the Forum was a peculiar temple dedicated to the double-faced god Janus. He was the door god, and was supposed to keep away evil. From him our month January received its name. The gates of the temple of Janus were open in time of war, and closed in time of peace. The idea was, perhaps, that in time of danger the people must be on the watch, but in time of peace they could close the doors and go about their usual duties.

Beautiful triumphal arches were erected in the Forum and near it, many of which are still standing. On these

arches can be seen carvings showing the victories of the Roman armies. The Senate House looked on the Forum,



THE ROMAN FORUM

and here the laws were made for mankind when the Romans controlled the civilized world, as they did for centuries.

A Roman Triumph

Through the Forum passed the procession when a Roman general, having returned with victory, was voted a triumph by the Senate. In the procession came the bearers of the standards of Rome, bronze eagles instead of flags. Then followed the senators and the magistrates of Rome. Musicians came next and then could be seen a long train of wagons bearing the rich spoils taken from captured cities. Sacred white oxen with gilded horns, led

by priests, followed slowly toward the altar where the oxen were to be sacrificed to the gods. Next came the captives in chains with their wives and children.

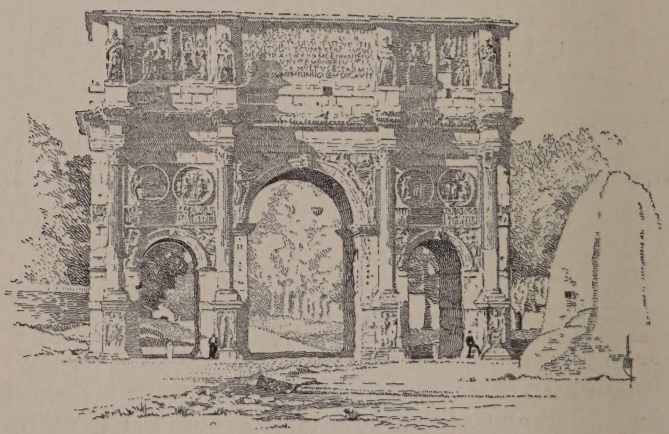
Last came the victorious general in a golden chariot drawn by four horses. He had a wreath round his head, a gold-embroidered robe on his shoulders, and a scepter in his hand. His soldiers followed. All moved up to the Capitol, where the wreath was laid on the lap of Jupiter.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe a Roman triumph.

2. When was the temple of Janus closed?

3. Many arches have been erected in America somewhat similar to those in Rome. Have you seen one?



ARCH OF CONSTANTINE

CHAPTER XXXI

THE RELIGION OF THE ROMANS

What the Romans Believed

The Romans worshiped, as gods, Jupiter, the ruler of the world; Juno, his wife; Venus, the goddess of beauty and love; Minerva, the goddess of wisdom; Neptune, the god of the sea; and many other gods and goddesses.

In Rome was the home of the vestal virgins, who watched the sacred fire in the temple of Vesta, the goddess of the home. The vestals were selected by the high priest from among the best families of Rome. When the selection was made, the maiden belonged to the state. Her hair was cut and a band of ribbon was placed round her head. The vestals were cared for by the state, and had a place of honor at the great festivals. When they rode through the streets, all drew back in their honor. If a criminal on the way to execution met a vestal virgin, he was at once pardoned. There were in all six vestals. They took vows for thirty years. At the end of that time they could return home if they so wished. If they broke their vows, they suffered the terrible fate of being buried alive.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Who were the principal Roman gods?
2. Who were the vestal virgins?
3. What peculiar privileges did the vestal virgins have?

CHAPTER XXXII

THE COLOSSEUM; ROMAN AQUEDUCTS

The Gladiators

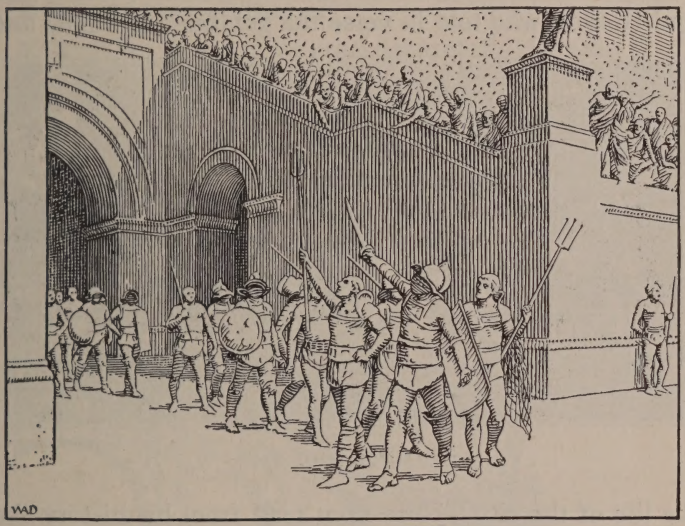
At the eastern end of the Forum was the Colosseum, a vast amphitheater erected for games. Its ruins are standing today. It would hold about fifty thousand people. The Colosseum could be flooded, if necessary, for a great naval battle. Here were seen fights between fierce animals like the tiger and the lion. Here were contests with swords, between men called gladiators (from *gladius,* the Latin word for sword). As they came into the arena, they bent their knee before the emperor and with drawn sword cried, "Hail, Cæsar! We who are about to die salute you."

If a gladiator was defeated and lay wounded, he asked for his life from the people. If they held their thumbs upward, his life was spared. If they turned their thumbs downward, he was put to death by the gladiator who had defeated him.

These horrible spectacles lasted for hundreds of years. In the year 404, while two gladiators were fighting, a monk, named Telemachus, ran into the arena and dashed between them. He was at once killed by the missiles of the angry spectators, but his death put an end to the terrible combats of the gladiators. In the Colosseum, at times, the Christians were exposed to wild beasts, who tore them to pieces.

Aqueducts; Commerce

Great stone aqueducts brought water from a distance of fifty miles to Rome. These aqueducts sometimes pierced hills by tunnels. In a low valley they were built on vast arches of solid masonry; the great Claudian aqueduct was in places one hundred feet high; this was



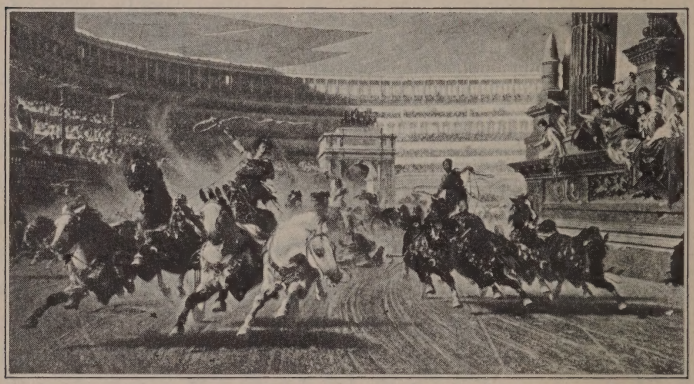
GLADIATORS ENTERING THE ARENA

necessary, for the Romans had not learned to use iron pipes. The ruins of many of these aqueducts can be seen outside Rome and in France. Some are in use today, after two thousand years, and bring a plentiful supply of water to the Eternal City.

Ships sailed from Rome in summer to Spain to secure gold, silver, iron, copper, and wool; to Egypt for grain, ivory, and ostrich feathers; to Greece for marble, bronzes,

and wine; to Gaul for lumber; to Syria for dyes and cedar; to Arabia for incense; to Britain for tin and leather; to Germany for furs; and even to India for cotton goods, silks, precious stones, incense, and spices. Few vessels, however, dared to sail the Mediterranean in winter.

In the Forum might be seen the famous poets Virgil and Horace, who told in verse the greatness of Rome and



© The Manchester Corporation

ROMAN CHARIOT RACE

the life of the city. Here Livy read from his history the story of the wonderful deeds of the ancient Romans and here also might be heard one of the world's greatest orators, Cicero, pleading before the people in some great discussion of state affairs.

The laborers of Rome were joined in guilds or clubs, somewhat like a modern trade union. Each guild had a god or goddess to which it was dedicated, and on the feast of the divinity there was a splendid procession. Since many of the games were free, the laboring class enjoyed the terrible combats of the gladiators in the Colosseum,

or the races in the Circus Maximus. Here each charioteer drove four horses abreast with breakneck speed round the course seven times.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the Colosseum.

2. Who were the gladiators?

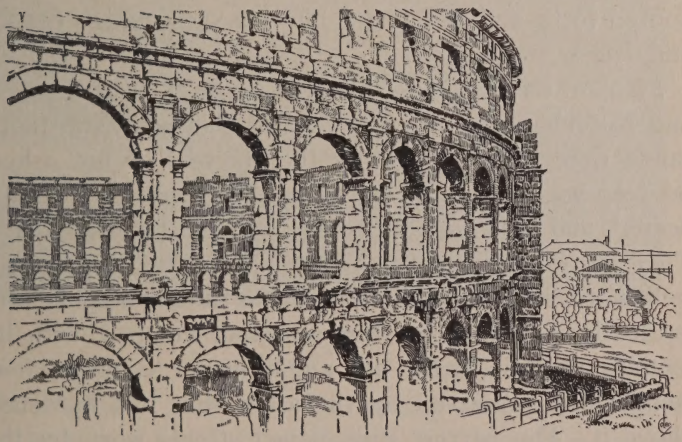
3. What put an end to the cruel fights of the gladiators?

4. Tell how water was brought to Rome.

5. Find out how your city secures its supply of water.

6. Have you read the description of the chariot race in "Ben Hur"?

7. The pictures of great events in the ancient world have come down to us generally by carvings on monuments. How are great events of today recorded for the sight of future generations?



RUINS OF A ROMAN AMPHITHEATER

CHAPTER XXXIII

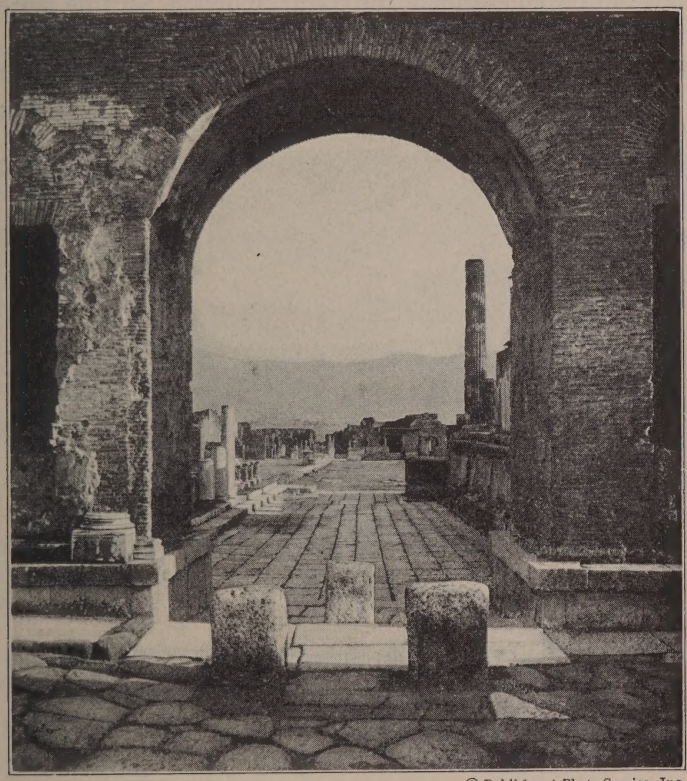
THE DESTRUCTION OF POMPEII; CHANGE IN ROMAN LIFE

The Eruption of Vesuvius

In the reign of the emperor Titus (A.D. 79), the volcano Vesuvius, on the Bay of Naples, began to show signs of activity. The Romans had known it as an extinct volcano, and they were naturally surprised when first the clouds of smoke began to rise from its summit. Darker and darker rolled the volumes of smoke, and the earthquakes told that something unusual was happening. Lava and mud ran down the side of the volcano. The ashes poured forth and fell about, burying the country deeper and deeper.

Many of the people escaped, but in the cities of Pompeii and Herculaneum, near the foot of the mountain, thousands were overwhelmed by the showers of hot ashes. So deep was the fall of the ashes that these cities disappeared, and remained buried for eighteen hundred years. They lay forgotten until 1748, when, in the digging of a well, statues were found. This led to further digging, and gradually, as the ashes were removed, Pompeii, with its temples, theaters, baths, and amphitheater, came to view, wonderfully preserved by the ashes that had hardened above it. The narrow stone-paved streets worn by the chariots, the ovens with bread within them, the bodies of the people who were smothered to death, and the beau-

tiful homes of the wealthy Romans could all be seen after the lapse of centuries. On the walls were rude drawings by schoolboys, and advertisements of public enter-



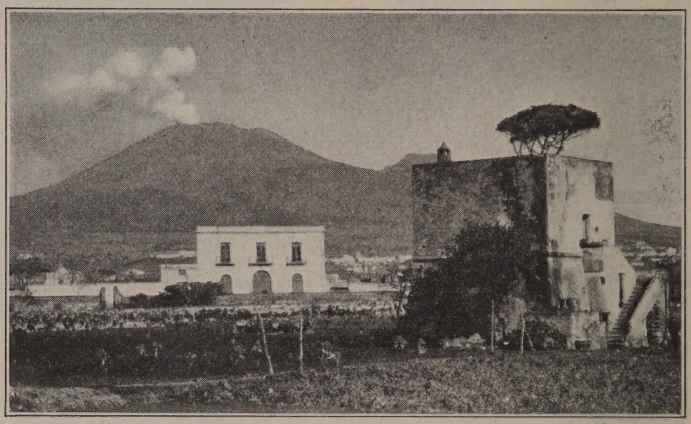
© Publishers' Photo Service, Inc.

THE RUINS OF POMPEII

tainments or of men who were seeking office. In Pompeii can be traced the story of Roman life; here is a picture of the rich cities of the provinces as they were in the days of Roman power.

Cause of Roman Decline

During these years a great change was taking place in Roman life. The rich gradually secured control of the land, and the condition of the common people became more and more wretched. When the farmers lost their land, they drifted to Rome, where they secured free food and entertainment. There was no longer any pride in being



© Publishers' Photo Service, Inc.

VESUVIUS AND POMPEII

a Roman, as was the case in the earlier days. The average Roman citizen refused to become a soldier, for the shortest term of service was sixteen years, and he was liable to be sent with his family to the most distant parts of the empire, with the possibility that he would never see his native home again. For this reason Goths, Germans, and Franks were drawn from the provinces to fill up the legions.

Numbers of these tribes came as slaves also, and others as colonists to settle the land left vacant by the

Roman citizens who had gone into the imperial city to live. The number of these tribesmen increased from year to year, and they were welcomed by the emperors. Many of these settlers adopted Roman manners and customs, and after a time were much like the earlier Roman citizens. They never had, of course, the same feeling of patriotism or of loyalty to Rome as the early Romans had.

In spite of its brilliant life Rome was declining. When, therefore, in the second century of our era the barbarians in search of plunder poured over the Alps, it was a mixed body of troops that tried to defend the city.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What cities were destroyed by Vesuvius?

2. How did this terrible disaster help us in our knowledge of history?

3. Describe the changed condition of the Roman farmer.

4. Outside of Italy, the Romans had many colonies. What lands beyond the continental limits of the United States are ruled by our country? Find out the form of government of these lands.

5. Name some of the buildings which Cæsar knew and which may still be seen today.

CHAPTER XXXIV

THE BIRTH OF CHRIST

The Birth of the Savior

When Augustus Cæsar had been on the throne thirty years, and there was peace throughout the Roman world, the greatest event in history occurred. Christ the Savior was born in Bethlehem, a small town in Judea not far from Jerusalem. The Bible tells us that shepherds watching their flocks heard angels proclaiming the tidings of great joy.

Judea was a Roman province, and the people had been cruelly treated by the Roman governors. For years the Jews had been looking for a Messiah, or Savior, who would come to free them.

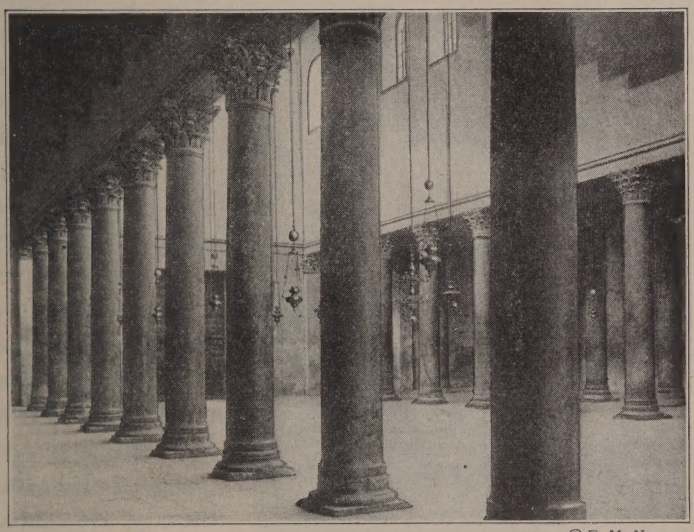
At this very time three Wise Men of the East came to Herod, king of Judea, to seek the new-born king, for they said they had seen his star in the East and had come to adore him.

When Herod heard that a king of the Jews had been born, he was very much disturbed. He feared he might be driven from his throne, because he knew the people did not like him. He inquired from his high priests where, according to the prophecy, Christ would be born, and they answered in Bethlehem. He asked the three Wise Men to go and find the Child, and then come back and tell him, that he too might go and adore him.

The Wise Men found the Child and Mary His Mother, and presented the gifts they had brought. They were

warned by an angel, however, not to return to Herod, and went home by another route. An angel appeared to Joseph, and told him to take the Child and Mary and to fly into Egypt.

When Herod found that the Wise Men had not returned, but had gone by another route to their own country, he



© E. M. Newman

CHURCH OF THE NATIVITY, BETHLEHEM

was very angry. He ordered all the boys two years of age and under to be killed, believing that the Christ Child would be among the number of the slain. The cruel Roman soldiers went throughout the city, tearing the children from their mothers who struggled in vain to save them.

After Herod's death the Holy Family returned to Nazareth, where the youthful Savior worked at the trade of a carpenter.

The Public Ministry of Christ

Christ began His public life when He was about thirty years of age. He was baptized in the Jordan River by John the Baptist. Going to Capharnaum, an important town on the Lake of Galilee, He called to him some of His disciples, as he named the chosen band who were to work with Him. At Jerusalem He drove the money changers from the temple, and preached the new baptism, but on account of the opposition of the high priests and teachers He left the city. He visited Samaria, Nazareth, and Capharnaum again, and gathered the twelve apostles who were to bear the gospel of the Master to the peoples of the world.

THE SERMON ON THE MOUNT

On the Mount of Beatitudes, Christ delivered His beautiful sermon opening with the consoling words, "Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven."

Many of the miracles of which we read in the Bible were now performed. Having gone again to Jerusalem Christ

CHRIST AND THE LITTLE CHILD

was soon arrested, and Pontius Pilate, governor of Judea, allowed Him to be put to death. He was crucified on Mount Calvary in the thirty-third year of His life. He died, forgiving His enemies, and handed down to His apostles the power to carry on His Church.

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

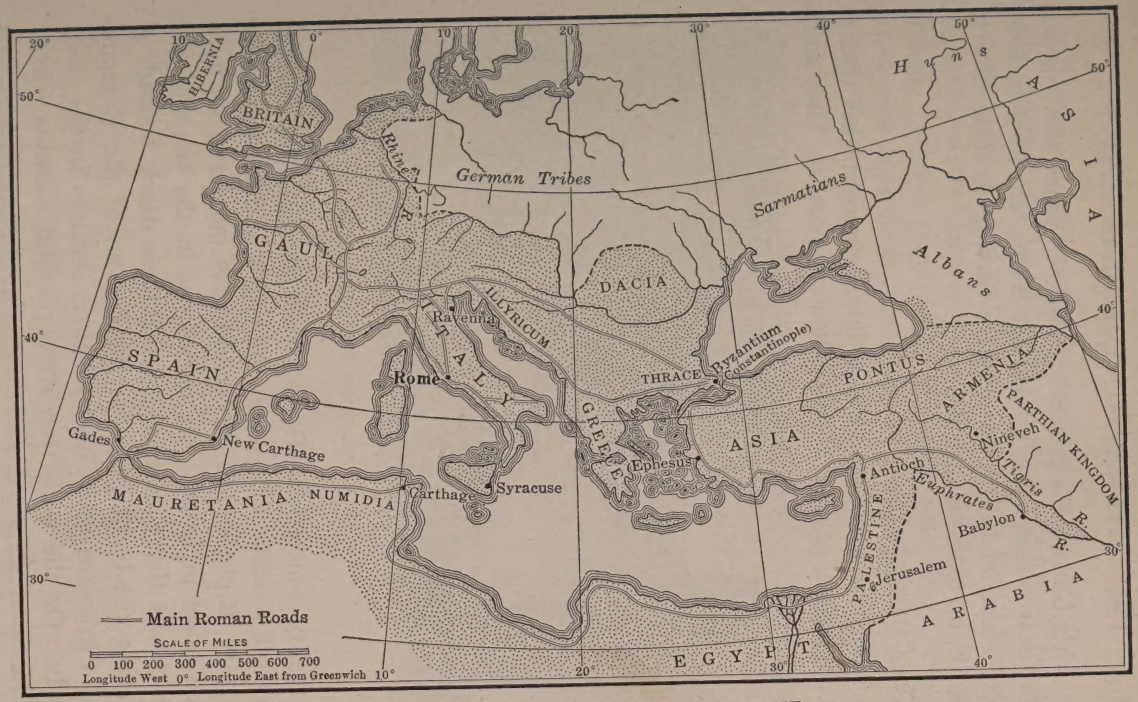
753 B.C. : Founding of Rome.
509 B.C. (*about*) : Rome a republic.
264–241 B.C. : First war between Rome and Carthage.
218–201 B.C. : Second war between Rome and Carthage.
149–146 B.C. : Third war between Rome and Carthage.
146 B.C. : Destruction of Carthage.
49 B.C. : Cæsar master of Rome.
31 B.C. : Augustus emperor.
A.D. 1 : Beginning of the Christian Era.

CHAPTER XXXV

THE PERSECUTION OF THE CHRISTIANS

The Persecutions under Nero

Some of the emperors after Augustus were men of good character; others were despots and criminals. The Roman government ordered the citizens to worship not only its many gods, but the emperor as well. The Christians refused to do this, and at times fierce persecutions broke out against them, especially in Rome, under Nero and Diocletian. The first years of Nero's rule were kindly, and it was thought his reign would be one of peace, like that of Augustus. After a few years, however, he began to act like a madman. He had his famous teacher Seneca put to death and he killed his wife, his mother, and many of the senators. In the midst of his crimes a fire broke out in Rome, in the year 64 of our era. It burned for nine days, and destroyed a large part of the city. It was said by many citizens that Nero set fire to the city himself, wishing to rebuild it in more beautiful form. Nero blamed the Christians for the fire, and a fearful persecution was begun against them. Some were tied to posts and covered with pitch; they were then set on fire to light the streets at night. Others were tied in skins of beasts, and ravenous dogs were allowed to tear them in pièces. Even young boys and girls were put to a cruel death. These Christians who cheerfully gave up their lives rather than abandon their faith are called martyrs.



ROMAN EMPIRE AT ITS GREATEST EXTENT

After bearing his crimes for fourteen years, the Romans themselves rose in revolt against Nero. He tried to hide, but when he heard the soldiers coming to drag him to death, he took his own life.

The Catacombs

Many of the Christians sought refuge in vast underground passages and rooms called catacombs. They were

THE MARTYRS OF THE COLOSSEUM

in reality cemeteries. These narrow passages, cut through the soft volcanic rock under the city and the surrounding country, if put end to end would have measured six hundred miles in length. In niches cut in the sides of the catacombs the Christians buried their dead, instead of burning the bodies, as was the custom of the Romans. The Christians often held religious services in the catacombs. On the walls they drew pictures showing Christ as the Good Shepherd, and they painted pictures of scenes from the lives of the apostles and from the Old Testament.

Not only in Rome were the persecutions severe, but in the provinces. In Asia Minor, by order of Marcus Aurelius, the aged bishop of Smyrna, Polycarp, was arrested and ordered to blaspheme the name of Christ. He answered, "I have served Him for eighty-six years. How can I now blaspheme the name of Him who has saved me?" Polycarp was led to execution. Even in Gaul the Christians suffered severely. At Lyons a slave girl, named Blandina, had become a Christian. She was tortured to compel her to change her faith, but she refused, saying, "I am a Christian." Finally, in the amphitheater, she was gored to death on the horns of an angry bull. She was later canonized as a saint of France.

In spite of persecutions the Christian religion spread rapidly. The good roads of the empire and the wide use of the Latin language helped the messengers of the Gospel to spread its truths far and wide.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the rule of Nero.
2. Who were the martyrs?
3. What were the catacombs?

CHAPTER XXXVI

CONSTANTINE THE GREAT

The Rise of Constantine

The last great persecution of the Christians was under Diocletian (A.D. 303–311), and it was the most violent of all. Fortunately a new era for the Christians was at hand. Diocletian, tired of the cares of office, resigned, after dividing the empire into two parts, the Eastern and the Western.

At this time the governor of Spain, Gaul, and Britain was Constantius Chlorus. He died at York, in England (A.D. 306), and was succeeded as governor in these provinces by his eldest son, Constantine, since called Constantine the Great. This new governor was a pagan, but his mother, Helena, was a devout Christian.

Constantine the Great decided to secure for himself the rule of a united Roman world, for at this time there were in all no less than six rulers of the empire. The course that lay before him was difficult, and he was eighteen years in accomplishing his purpose. Drilling the legions under him in Britain until they were a strong, well-disciplined body, he crossed into Gaul.

One by one the rival emperors died or were killed in battle. After six years Constantine invaded Italy, to attack the Roman forces under Maxentius. Before the battle he was said to have seen in the heavens a fiery cross, beneath which were the words, "In this sign conquer." He became a Christian, and with the emblem of the cross

on his standard and on the shields of his soldiers he went out to fight the decisive battle.

The armies met at the Mulvian Bridge, a few miles from Rome (A.D. 312). Constantine won a great victory, and Maxentius was drowned in attempting to escape. This battle marks a turning point in history. By this victory and that at Adrianople twelve years later, when he defeated Licinius, who was the Eastern emperor, Constantine became the sole ruler of the Roman Empire. The Roman Senate erected in his honor the arch which may be seen today in Rome.

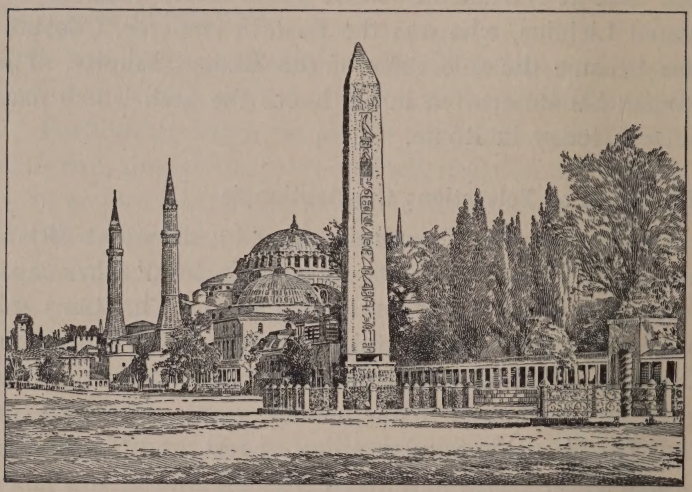
The Edict of Toleration; Constantinople

In the year 313 Constantine issued a decree at Milan, his capital, granting liberty of worship to all Christians, Jews, and pagans. He gave back to the Christians the property which had been taken from them by Diocletian. Later he gave to the Christian church the right to receive gifts, and he himself made a large grant of land to the church. He made Sunday a day of rest, and his soldiers as well as the slaves were freed from all unnecessary labor on that day. He tried to prevent the gladiatorial shows and punishment by crucifixion for criminals.

A most important event was the founding (A.D. 330) of Constantinople, or the city of Constantine, as the word means. There had been for a thousand years a Greek town, named Byzantium on the narrow strait separating Europe from Asia. The place was easy of defense, and had a wonderful harbor. By building his new city Constantine controlled the route to Asia, and the sea passage to the great corn and wheat fields of the Black Sea region of southern Russia. Since the Roman armies had already

conquered the East, this city was the central point of the great commerce between the East and the West.

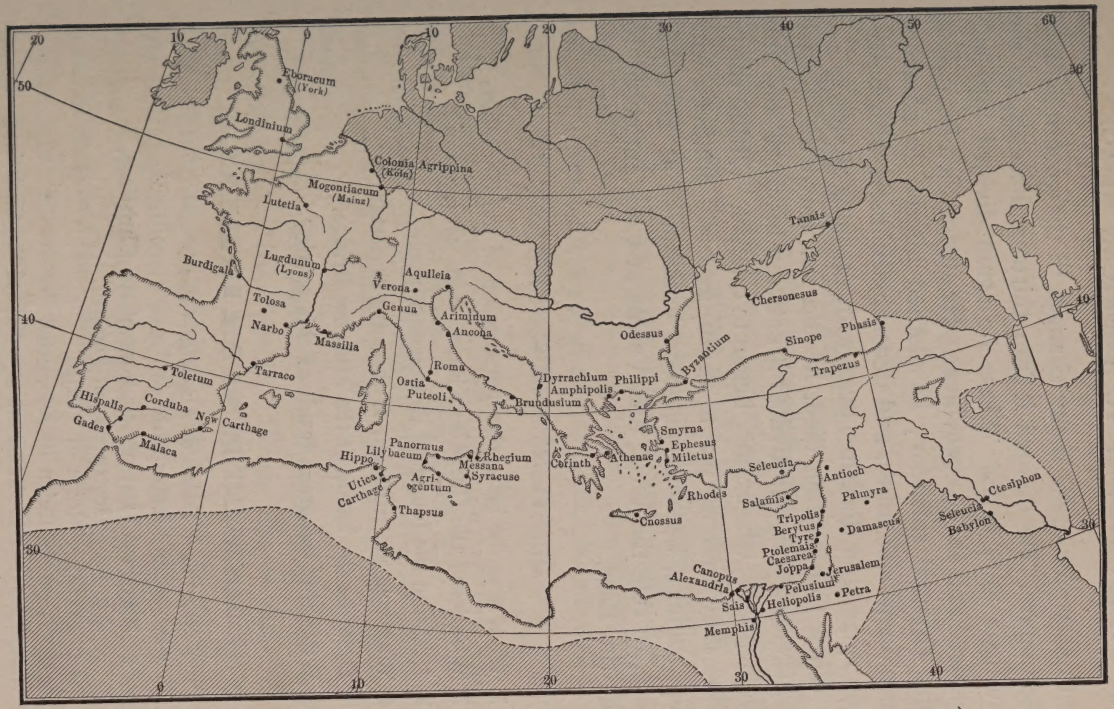
To beautify his new city, Constantine erected magnificent buildings. Forums were laid out, and aqueducts, theaters, temples, baths, amphitheaters, and a hippodrome were built. A golden milestone declared the spot to be



CONSTANTINOPLE

the central point of the world. Statues, marble columns, bronzes, obelisks, and paintings were brought from Egypt, Greece, and other lands, and fine fabrics were secured in India and China to beautify the houses.

To defend the city, walls were erected, fortified by numerous towers. These walls extended far enough outside the city to include the seven hills near it. So strong was its position that for almost nine hundred years it defied the attacks of its enemies.



CHIEF COMMERCIAL CENTERS OF ROMAN EMPIRE (SECOND CENTURY A.D.)

Constantine made many changes in the government of the empire. He divided it into thirteen dioceses, as the divisions were called. These he again divided into one hundred and sixteen provinces. He surrounded his palace with Oriental splendor; he clothed himself in gorgeous purple and silk robes, and decorated himself with bracelets, rings, and diadems, inset with precious stones.

When Constantine died, he did not leave the empire to his eldest son, but divided it between his three sons and two nephews, who at once began to quarrel. Within thirty years they were all put to death, and two brothers, who were soldiers, became emperors, Valentinian at Milan, in Italy, to rule the West, and Valens at Constantinople, to rule the East.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the last great persecution of the Christians?
2. Who freed the Christian church from persecution?
3. Describe the founding of Constantinople.
4. Why was the situation of this city important?
5. Describe the battle of the Mulvian Bridge.
6. What was the great result of this battle?

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

A.D. 14 : Death of Augustus Cæsar.
A.D. 54–68 : Reign of Nero.
A.D. 64 : First persecutions of the Christians.
A.D. 79 : Destruction of Pompeii.
A.D. 98–117 : Reign of Trajan.
A.D. 284–305 : Reign of Diocletian.
A.D. 303–311 : Last great persecution of the Christians.
A.D. 313 : Constantine's Edict of Toleration.

CHAPTER XXXVII

THE INVASION OF THE GERMANS

The Germans move Southward

We come now to the beginning of a new era in the Roman world, which was the advance of the northern tribes against the frontiers of the Roman Empire. We have already seen that the Gauls had sacked Rome three hundred and ninety years before Christ. Two hundred and ninety years later, German tribes, named the Cimbri and the Teutons, had swept across Gaul. Rome was in a panic, and Roman armies under Marius were sent against them.

The Teutons marched down the valley of the Rhone. When they met the Romans, they cried out, "Have you any messages for your wives in Italy? We shall soon be there." After a furious battle Marius utterly defeated them.

The Cimbri had marched over the Alps and knew nothing of the fate of the Teutons. When Marius came up to them, they demanded land for themselves and the Teutons. Marius replied grimly, "I have given the Teutons all the land they will ever need." To show what he meant, he exhibited the bloody heads of the Teuton leaders. Thereupon he attacked the Cimbri and destroyed them.

For years the empire had peace, but again after centuries the German hordes appeared at the frontiers, coming out of the forests of the north.

Life of the Early Germans

These barbarians had no walled towns, but lived in villages which were protected by high fences. Their houses were round wooden cabins with thatched roofs. A hole in the top let out the smoke. They secured their food by hunting and fishing, and to a certain extent by tilling the soil. They raised large herds of cattle and flocks of sheep. The women wove linen, and made other kinds of cloth, as well as the various articles used in the home.

ANCIENT GERMAN LIFE

In appearance the early Germans were tall with large bodies. Their hair was light-colored and their eyes were generally blue. They dressed in skins, keeping their arms and shoulders free. In battle they wore coats with iron chains on them to protect them. On their heads they had helmets with long plumes. They were fond of quarreling and fighting. They drank and ate to excess.

To settle questions of peace and war, the warriors came together in council. They clashed their swords on the shields if they wished to vote yes. They elected their war-chief and went forth gladly to war. Their punishments were severe. They buried a coward alive in a

swamp. The women were as eager as the men for battle, and cheered their husbands and sons when they went forth to war. Often they went with them and shared the hardships and dangers of the camp and battlefield. The people were strong in body because they lived in the open

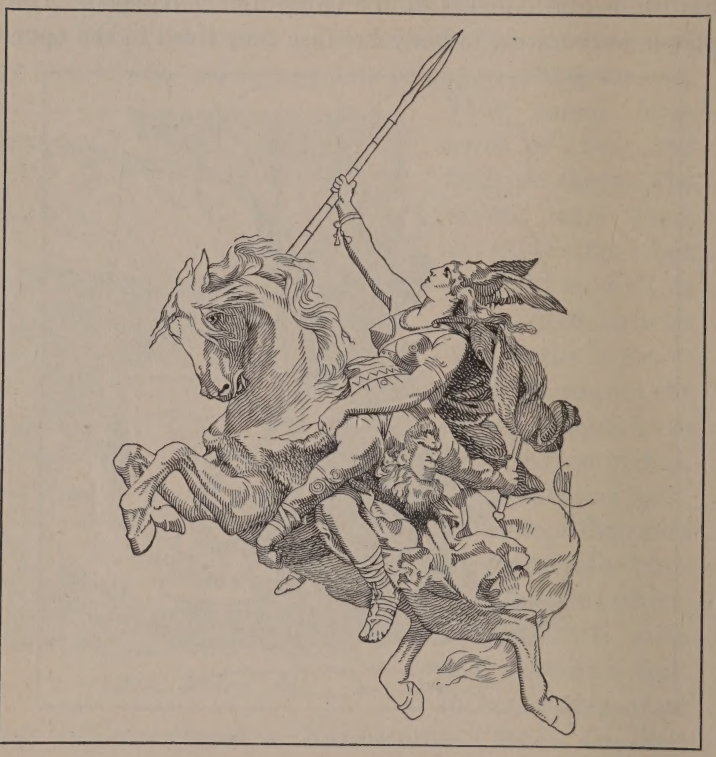
WODEN

air. They boasted at one time that they had not slept under a roof for fourteen years. They were dangerous enemies, as the Romans learned all too soon.

The German Religion

The Germans believed in many gods, and in the worship of the powers of nature, such as the sun. They thought

there were spirits in the rivers and forests, the rocks, mountains, stars, and storms. They held their services in groves of trees instead of in churches. Their chief god



VALKYRIE BEARING A HERO TO VALHALLA

was Woden (or Odin), who was the god of the sky and the winds, and of war. For this reason he carried a spear. Another god was Thor, who let loose the dreaded thunderbolts. He was the god of the storms, who fought the ice-giants. When he hurled his mighty hammer, it always

returned to him. From the names of these gods we have the names of some of our days of the week, like Wednesday and Thursday from Woden and Thor.

The early Teutons believed that if the warriors were brave and died fighting, they went to Valhalla, where with Woden and the other gods they spent their time forever feasting and rejoicing. The Valkyries were beautiful maidens who were sent out by Woden every day to bring to him the bodies of the heroes who had died in battle, and they returned across a rainbow bridge, each with a hero in her arms.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Tell the story of the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutons.
2. Describe the ancient Germans.
3. Find the origin of the days of the week.
4. Who were the Valkyries?

CHAPTER XXXVIII

THE COMING OF THE GOTHS

The Goths on the Danube

The emperor Augustus had recommended that the boundary of the empire should not be extended beyond the limits which it had in his day, and that it should be defended by strong forts, broad rivers, or chains of mountains, for he believed that if the empire was extended too far, it could not be defended. Later emperors did not agree with this idea, and pushed the frontiers farther, making it difficult to protect them, as now became evident.

About forty years after the death of Constantine the Great, there appeared, on the north bank of the Danube River, large numbers of a German tribe called the Visigoths, or West Goths. They had come from the shores of the Baltic Sea, years before, and had made their home in the great fertile plains of western Russia. They now told the Romans of an attack which had been made on them by a fierce Tartar or Mongolian race called the Huns, who had come in overwhelming numbers from the country about the Caspian Sea. The Huns had driven these West Goths from their homes, and with their wives and children, their horses and wagons, and all their goods they had fled to seek safety within the line of fortified posts on the borders of the Roman Empire. They asked permission to cross the Danube into the Roman territory.

The Roman emperor, much against his will, allowed

two hundred thousand to cross the river. Soon a horde of their relatives, the Ostrogoths, or East Goths, appeared, having also been driven out by the Huns. The emperor now became alarmed at the large number of the Goths, and refused to allow more to cross the frontier. When they refused to obey and crossed over, he attacked them, but was defeated and killed in the famous battle of Adrianople (A.D. 378). It was the most crushing defeat the Roman armies had suffered since Hannibal defeated them at Cannæ almost six hundred years before.

Theodosius the Great

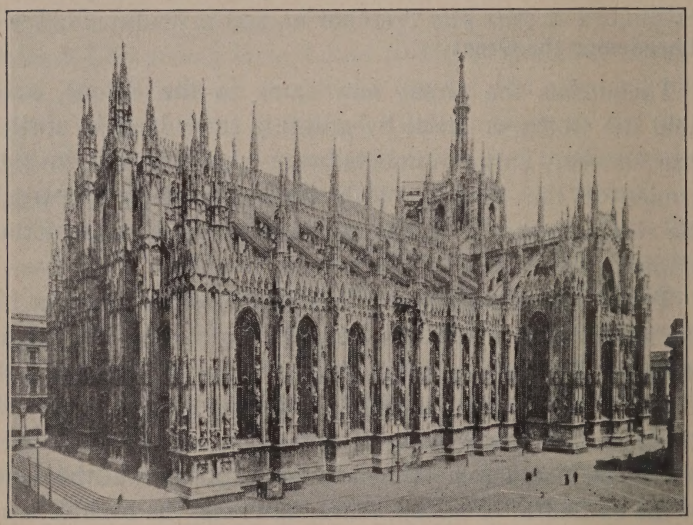
Theodosius the Great now came to the throne, and held the Goths in check by granting them land in northern Greece. Large numbers were also enrolled in the armies of the empire. With these troops he defeated the rival emperor in Rome, and became sole ruler of the empire.

Theodosius established Christianity as the religion of the state, forbade heathen worship, and closed the pagan temples. He gave way at times to fits of the greatest anger. Because the people of Thessalonica in a riot had killed some of his officers, he ordered seven thousand citizens to be massacred. When he later appeared at the door of the cathedral of Milan, Saint Ambrose, the archbishop, clad in his pontifical robes, forbade him to enter until he had publicly acknowledged his crime and asked pardon for it. Aghast at the words, Theodosius withdrew. Later he returned in the dress of a penitent and in public expressed sorrow for his crime, and asked forgiveness. He was then admitted by Saint Ambrose to the services of the church.

When he died, the empire was divided between his two weak sons, and there was now an Eastern and a Western empire.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Where did the West Goths come from?
2. Describe the battle of Adrianople.
3. What did Theodosius do for Christianity?
4. How did Saint Ambrose rebuke Theodosius?



THE CATHEDRAL OF MILAN

CHAPTER XXXIX

THE FALL OF ROME; SAINT AUGUSTINE

Why Rome began to Decline

You may wonder why the Romans, who earlier had conquered the world, were now unable to defend their own territory. There were many reasons for this. Continued war, great pestilences, and wide-spread famines had reduced the population by millions. Again the wealth that for ages had poured into Rome had made the people weak. The noble Romans like Cincinnatus and Cato, who had lived simple lives, had passed away, and their descendants were puny and helpless. The farmers who had formed the backbone of the citizenship of the early days had lost their homes through heavy taxation, and had disappeared in the ever-increasing mob who lived in Rome, where they demanded bread and free tickets to the Circus and the gladiatorial games.

The supply of slaves had almost entirely run out, for the Romans no longer swept in triumph through provinces filled with large populations that could be enslaved. Commerce declined, and Roman ships no longer dotted the Mediterranean. The barbarians had been enrolled in the armies to take the places left vacant by the Roman citizens; they soon saw how powerless the Romans were and how strong in numbers they themselves were; they often revolted, therefore, and set up and pulled down emperors.

THE BARBARIAN KINGDOMS
about A.D. 500
Teutonic Settlements
Celts
Roman Empire
0 100 200 300 400 500 600 700 800
Scale of Miles
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
Eboracum (York)
Londinium (London)
Thames R.
Seine R.
Loire R.
Rhine R.
Danube R.
Po R.
Tiber R.
Ebro R.
Tagus R.
Guadalquivir R.
Nile R.
Euphrates R.
Tigris R.
Persian Gulf
CASPIAN SEA
BLACK SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Str. of Gibraltar
BALEARIC Is.
CRETE
Irish
FRANKISH KINGDOM
Paris
Chalons
BURGUNDIAN
Geneva
Lyons
Bordeaux
SUEVIAN KING.
Toulouse
Arles
Narbonne
WEST GOTHIC KINGDOM
Toledo
Barcelona
Cordova
VANDAL KINGDOM
Carthage
Milan
Ravenna
Nice
Salona
Rome
Naples
CORSICA
SARDINIA
ITALIA
ILLYRICUM
THRACE
MACEDONIA
Constantinople
Thessalonica
Cherson
PONTUS
Trapezus (Trebizond)
Nicæa
ASIA
Amida
Antioch
Nisibis
Nineveh
Thebarmes
PERSIAN KINGDOM
Ctesiphon
Persarum
Elia
EGYPT
Alexandria
THE EAST
Saracens
Persian Gulf
Lombards
Goths
Huns
Franks
Burgundians
Vandals
Saxons
Alamanni
Thuringians
Chassanides

Gradually province after province rebelled against the cruel and thieving governors. Cicero said the people of a province feared their governor more than a devastating army. The time had at last come when the barbarians, no longer either fearing or respecting the name of Rome, made up their minds to carve the empire into pieces for themselves.

Alaric and the Goths

The Goths soon invaded all parts of the Roman world. Under Alaric, their youthful king and leader, they invaded Greece, plundering and destroying as they marched. Athens, Corinth, and Sparta fell into their hands almost without a blow, and were sacked while the people were led into slavery. Alaric led his army into Italy, but was driven back by an able general named Stilicho. Six years later Stilicho was treacherously put to death by the ungrateful emperor, who had become jealous of him. Alaric at once returned and appeared before Rome, which had not seen an enemy from its walls for four hundred years.

When the Romans asked him what he wished as a price of departing, he demanded so much that they asked, "What do you leave us?" He answered with scorn, "Your lives." As the emperor at Ravenna refused to make a treaty of peace with him, Alaric returned and captured Rome (A.D. 410). He marched in triumph through the streets, and ascending the throne of the Cæsars, ordered the people to bow before him as emperor. He gave his soldiers permission to sack the city. After days of plundering they departed, carrying off trains of wagons filled with the rich spoil which they had found in Rome and other cities of Italy.

Rome never recovered from this event. The tribes of the north now knew that her great military power could be easily broken, and that her rule over the world was at an end. On his journey southward from the pillage of Rome, Alaric died. To conceal his burial place, a river was turned from its course, a tomb was built in the river bed, and the water was once more allowed to flow in its old channel. The Goths then put to death the men who had done the work, so that they could never tell the spot of burial.

Alaric's brother succeeded him, made peace with the emperor, and married the emperor's sister.

Effect of the Fall of Rome

The fall of Rome seemed to many like the end of the world, and far and wide the news went forth. The pagans said that the city which they believed to be eternal had fallen because the Roman gods were no longer worshiped.

At this time Saint Augustine, who was bishop of the small diocese of Hippo, near Carthage, in Africa, wrote a famous book called "The City of God," in which he declared that the only city or state that was or could be eternal was the eternal kingdom of God. In this book, which was one of the most widely read in Europe, he shows the weakness of the pagan religion, and the beauty and worth of the Christian faith.

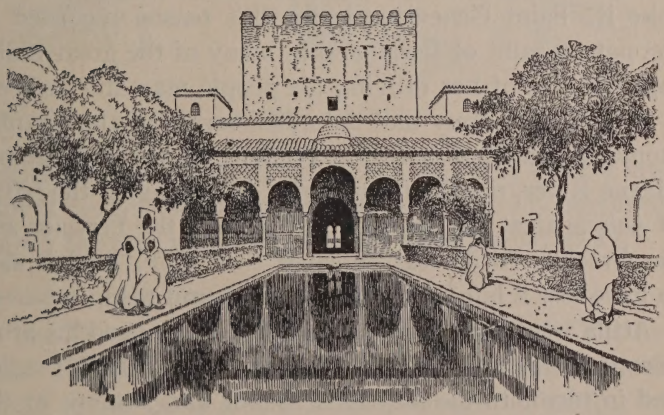
Saint Augustine wrote hundreds of letters on faith and morals to all parts of the known world, and his sermons, books, and pamphlets are numbered by hundreds. He was one of the brilliant minds of the fourth century, and one of its most profound thinkers.

In their southward march some of the Goths went into Spain, where they built up the kingdom of the Visigoths,

which lasted for three hundred years, until it was overthrown (A.D. 711) by the Moors, or Mohammedans, who came across the Strait of Gibraltar from Africa. Another German tribe called the Vandals went through Spain, and being pressed forward by the West Goths, crossed into Africa, where they organized an empire at Carthage. They built up large fleets, which sailed far and wide on the Mediterranean, robbing any vessels they met and plundering the coast towns. From them our word "vandalism," meaning wanton destruction, is derived. The beautiful southern province of Spain, Andalusia, received its name from this tribe.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the invasion of Alaric.
2. What happened to the empire of the West Goths in Spain?
3. Who were the Vandals?



A COURT IN THE MOORISH ALHAMBRA

CHAPTER XL

THE HUNS AND VANDALS

Attila, the Scourge of God

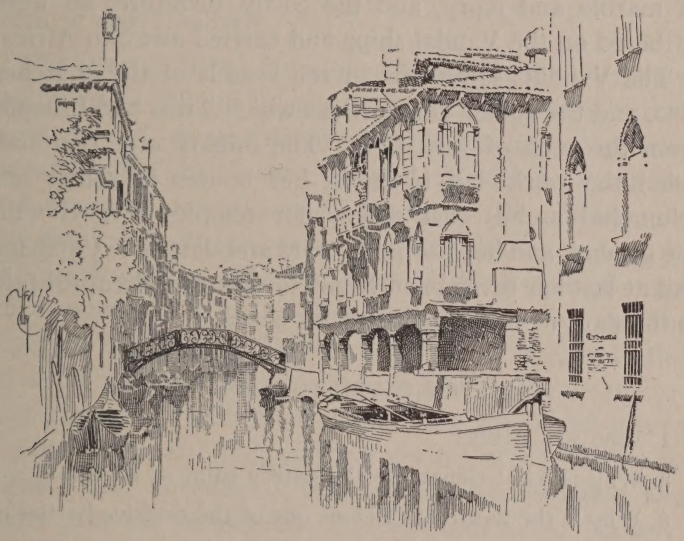
The Huns, who had driven the Goths before them, now appeared in western Europe. Their home had been the grassy plains of western Asia. Their leader was Attila, called the Scourge of God. He boasted that the grass never grew where his horse had once trod. His empire stretched from the Volga to the Rhine.

Although Theodosius had given him land, he was soon on the march again. He advanced into France, burning and destroying everything in his path. The people of Paris were in a panic, but a young shepherd girl, Genevieve, urged them to defend the city, and Attila could not take it. Saint Genevieve is for this reason regarded as the patron saint of Paris, and in many of the great buildings pictures of her rallying the people may still be seen.

Attila's vast army met the allied forces of the Franks, Romans, and West Goths, at Châlons, on the now famous Marne River, not far from Paris. It was again the battle of Asia against Europe, as in the days of the Persians and the Greeks. Attila was defeated (A.D. 451), and is said to have lost a hundred and fifty thousand men.

Attila went back across the Rhine, and moved his army over the Alps into Italy. The people along the Po valley fled in terror to the scattered islands and swamps at the mouth of that river. Here they built up the beautiful city

of Venice which became one of the great commercial centers of the Middle Ages. When Attila, burning and pillaging city after city on his march, drew near the city of Rome, Pope Leo the Great went out to meet him, and begged him to spare the city. Attila, deeply moved by the eloquent words and the dignity of the Supreme Pontiff,



A CANAL IN VENICE

consented and withdrew his armies, but only after a large sum of money had been given to him. On his northward march he died, and his vast army soon melted away.

Invasion of the Vandals

The Romans now thought their city was safe, but they were mistaken, for danger arose from another quarter. The Vandals came across from Carthage, in Africa, and entered the Tiber with a large fleet. Pope Leo again went

forth to save the city. The Vandal leader agreed to spare the lives of the people, but demanded that the treasures of the temples, public buildings, and palaces be given up to his soldiers. For fourteen days they pillaged the city. The wealth and trophies of centuries, the hangings of the homes, the gold and silver dishes, the jewels, the statues of marble and ivory, and the costly furniture, all were gathered on the Vandal ships and carried away to Africa.

The Vandals seized the sacred vessels of the churches also, and the golden candlesticks which Titus had brought from the sack of Jerusalem. The mighty city that had ruled the world lay in ruins, her houses in ashes, her triumphal arches cast down, her temples leveled with the ground, and her people in tears and despair. Carthage had at last her revenge on Rome for her own dreadful fate in the days of Cato, six centuries before.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Who was Attila?

2. Why is Saint Genevieve the patron saint of Paris?

3. Why is the battle of Châlons one of the decisive battles of the world?

4. Describe the sack of Rome by the Vandals.

5. What recent events of great importance occurred at the Marne River?

6. On the Arch of Titus in Rome is a picture of the golden candlesticks which Titus seized in Jerusalem. See if you can find a picture of this arch.

CHAPTER XLI

THEODORIC AND THE LOMBARDS

Odoacer and Theodoric

The German tribes set up new nations in the lands they had overrun. In 476 Odoacer, a German chieftain, pushed aside the last, weak Roman emperor, Romulus Augustulus, and seized the throne. He took the title of Patrician, and appeared to rule as a deputy of the emperor at Constantinople, but in reality he ruled as king in his own right at Ravenna. The break-up of the Roman Empire was complete (A.D. 476). Seventeen years later a new foe appeared in Italy. It was the Ostrogoths, or East Goths, led by Theodoric, who had asked the Eastern emperor for permission to attack Odoacer. "If I win, I will govern in your name; if I fail, you will get rid of a troublesome friend," said Theodoric. The emperor believed this, and gladly gave the permission. Theodoric defeated Odoacer, and then treacherously slew him with his own hand.

Theodoric ruled for thirty-three years, and brought about many reforms. He built roads and beautiful buildings, drained marshes, invited scholars to his court, and brought back some of the prosperity of the earlier days. His tomb at Ravenna is still in perfect condition.

The East Goths, however, were soon face to face with another Germanic tribe, called the Lombards, who came pouring over the mountains from the north. The East Goths were defeated, and for two hundred years the Lom-

bards held the valley of the Po. From them the region was named Lombardy. This was the last barbaric invasion of Italy.

The Lombards did not establish a single great nation in Italy. Instead they divided the country into a number

MAP OF EUROPE IN THE TIME OF THEODORIC

of small city-states, somewhat like those of the Greeks. Each state had its own capital, and was called a duchy. These city-states existed for centuries, and the Italians looked upon themselves, not as Italians, but as citizens of certain cities.

When the Lombards came over the Alps, they were not members of the Catholic Church. They were brought into that church by Pope Gregory. This Pope was born in Rome, and his family had large wealth. Giving up the brilliant life of Roman society, he turned over his property to found numerous monasteries and became an humble monk.

ITALY UNDER THE LOMBARDS

When he saw the light-haired boys from Britain for sale in the slave market of Rome, he asked who they were. "They are Angles," was the answer. "Not Angles, but angels," was his reply. He was so impressed by this scene that he asked to be allowed to go to Britain as a missionary.

Instead, he was sent to Constantinople on important matters for the reigning Pontiff. He was later elected Pope and from his work is called Gregory the Great. It was he who sent Augustine to Britain to convert the pagans

of that island, as he never forgot the scene in the slave market of Rome many years before.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the rule of Theodoric.

2. Find Ravenna on the map.

3. Relate the scene in the slave market of Rome.

4. Are there any slave markets in the world today?

5. The crown of the Lombard kings was called the "Iron Crown." See if you can find the reason for giving it this name.

THE ENGLISH SLAVE BOYS IN ROME

CHAPTER XLII

THE RISE OF THE FRANKS

The Customs of the Franks

In its effect on the world's history one of the most important of these Germanic tribes was that of the tall, fair-haired Franks. At first their king, as was the German custom, was elected by vote of the tribes. Later the kingly power was handed down from father to son; in other words, it became hereditary in the family of a great hero from whom the kings of this line were called Merovingians. They wore long flowing hair as a sign of royalty. No woman could succeed to the throne. The people were followers of the old pagan religion of Woden and other gods.

The Franks had many peculiar customs. Every injury to a Frank was rated at a certain price, which must be paid to the injured person. It cost a certain amount for injury to a leg or to an eye. Even death could be arranged for by paying a certain sum of gold to the family of the person who had been killed. The spoils of war were divided by lot among the soldiers. Even the king was compelled to take only what fell to his share.

Clovis, the Great Frankish Leader

The great leader of the early Franks was Clovis. He built up his power by defeating the Roman soldiers who were still in Gaul. This was five hundred years after Cæsar and his legions had routed the Gauls in this same territory.

A few years after his victory over the Romans, Clovis was attacked by German tribes that had crossed the Rhine. One of these battles, fought near Cologne (A.D. 496), was for a long time in doubt. Clovis was a pagan, but he made a vow that if he won he would accept the faith of his wife Clotilda, who was a Christian. Clovis won a great victory, and remembering his vow, went with three thousand of his followers to be baptized on Christmas day in the church at Rheims. The church was so beautifully decorated that Clovis asked if it was heaven. "No, but it is the road that leads to it," was the answer.

FRANKISH WARRIOR

Clovis carried his arms to victory everywhere, and made Paris his capital.

The Merovingian kings during the next two hundred years became gradually weaker, and lost their power and influence. They are called in history the Do-Nothing kings. Their kingdom was in reality ruled by an officer called the Mayor of the Palace. This officer gradually became far more powerful than the king, who was at the last a mere figurehead. Finally one Mayor, Pippin, dared to seize the throne. He cut off the hair of the ruling king, and became the absolute ruler (A.D. 751). The Merovingian kings disappeared, and a new dynasty, called the Carolingian, sat on the throne.

These rulers of France were all of German stock. The people, however, were as a rule of Celtic origin. In spite of their foreign rulers they retained their own manners and customs which have given to France so marked an individuality.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Who were the Franks?

2. Describe some of the customs of the Franks.

3. Relate the story of the conversion of Clovis.

4. How did France get its name? What did the Romans call it?

FRANCE IN THE TIME OF MEROVINGIANS

CHAPTER XLIII

JUSTINIAN THE GREAT

The Era of Justinian

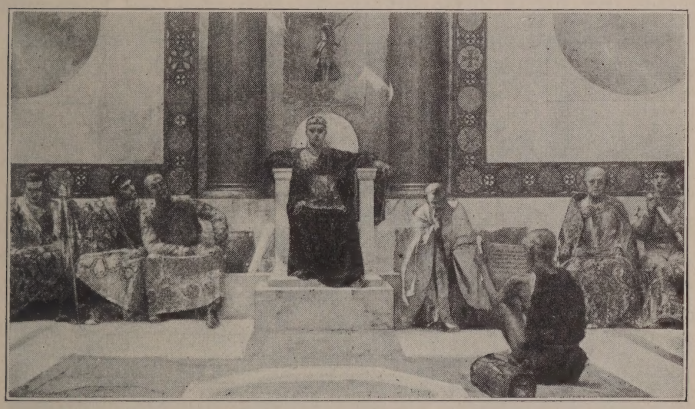
About this time a new ruler arose in Constantinople who brought about a great change in the affairs of Europe. This was the emperor Justinian the Great. His rise reads like a story. It is said he was born among the Goths, in the land now called Bulgaria, and became a shepherd. He had an uncle in the guard of the emperor at Constantinople, and he made up his mind to go to that city and live there.

He started alone on foot and after great hardships reached Constantinople. His uncle received him with great joy, and taking him into his family, gave him a good education. In time his uncle was raised to the throne as emperor. He adopted the young Justinian, and when he died, Justinian became emperor of the East. Justinian organized armies and sent them to Africa, where they overthrew the Vandals. Later they conquered Italy, and Justinian was the ruler of the world.

Sancta Sophia

Justinian adorned Constantinople with beautiful public buildings. He erected a church here which is one of the most famous in the world. It was dedicated to Sancta Sophia, which means Holy Wisdom. This church is one of the few great buildings of the ancient world which

have been saved, and it is still in good condition. To erect this wonderful building, Justinian obtained marble, granite, cedar, ivory, gold, and silver in all parts of the world, and robbed many cities of their treasures to beautify this new temple on the Bosporus. The walls were covered with small and delicately cut stones and jewels, sunk in cement to form pictures. Such pictures are called mosaics.



JUSTINIAN AND HIS COURT

In 1453, when the city fell into the hands of the Turks, the Turks covered the mosaics of Christ and the saints in Sancta Sophia with whitewash, and removed all Christian emblems.

Justinian had declared that he would erect this great temple at his own expense, without gifts from anybody. According to the story, he proudly ordered his architect to cut over the main doorway this inscription: "This House to God, Justinian, Emperor, gave." After seven years of labor the great building was finished, and Justinian rode toward it in triumph. He looked at the in-

scription and read these words: "This House to God, Euphrasia, widow, gave." In great anger he sent for the architect, who declared he had used the words given him by Justinian. How this other inscription came there, he could not tell.

Justinian ordered Euphrasia to be brought to him. When she was found, she was seen to be a poor woman

SANCTA SOPHIA

dressed in rags. She knew nothing about the inscription. She said she had nothing to give for the great temple, but one day when the mules were drawing the stone to the temple, they were tired and hungry, and stopped directly in front of her door. Taking straw from her poor mattress she had in pity given some to them. Justinian saw that a miracle had changed the inscription, and he bowed his head, thinking of his foolish pride.

Europe is indebted to Justinian for the silkworm. Three thousand years before Christ the Chinese had discovered how to secure silk from the silkworm. They guarded the secret carefully, and would not allow any worms or eggs to be brought away from their country. A monk, returning from China to the court of Justinian, brought some of the eggs concealed in the hollow of a bamboo cane. The eggs were hatched, and the worms were given the leaves

THE ROMAN EMPIRE UNDER JUSTINIAN

of the mulberry. They thrived so well that silk culture and weaving spread to Greece, where the mulberry tree grows, and then to many parts of southern Europe, especially Sicily, France, and Spain.

Justinian ordered the laws of the empire to be gathered together and simplified. This is the famous Justinian Code, which has been the basis of the laws of the civilized world for fifteen hundred years.

Justinian's armies conquered the Vandal kingdom of north Africa, and defeated the Goths of Italy. This brought the world under his rule. For nearly forty years he ruled with wisdom and justice.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. With what famous city was Justinian connected?

2. Tell the story of his life.

3. Tell the story of the silkworm.

4. What was the Justinian Code?

5. Find, on the map, Constantinople.

6. The numbers at the head of each chapter of this book are in the Roman notation. Which is the easier system, the Roman or the Arabic?

7. Can you name any cities in our country where silk is manufactured?

8. In what recent events was the great importance of the position of Constantinople shown?

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

A.D. 371 : The West Goths cross the Danube.
A.D. 378 : Battle of Adrianople.
A.D. 395 : Division of the Roman Empire.
A.D. 402 : Alaric invades Italy.
A.D. 410 : Alaric sacks Rome.
A.D. 429–533 : Kingdom of the Vandals in Africa.
A.D. 451 : Defeat of the Huns at Châlons.
A.D. 455 : Sack of Rome by the Vandals.
A.D. 476 : Break-up of the Roman Empire in the West.
A.D. 493–526 : Reign of Theodoric of the East Goths.
A.D. 496 : Baptism of Clovis.
A.D. 496 : Franks become Christians.
A.D. 527–565 : Era of Justinian.

CHAPTER XLIV

THE ERA OF CHARLEMAGNE

Charlemagne, King of the Franks

Nearly three hundred years after Clovis had founded the nation of the Franks, a leader came to the throne (A.D. 768) who was called Charlemagne, a name which means Charles the Great. Charlemagne was a grandson of Charles Martel, who defeated the Moors at Tours. He is one of the leading men in history. He was tall and of great strength, surpassing all about him in hunting, riding, and swimming. He was moderate in eating and drinking. He spent his early life amidst the hardships of the camp or of the field of battle. He had handsome features, blue eyes, and a long, flowing beard. He dressed as a rule like a simple soldier, with linen tunic, leggings, and long cloak of blue cloth. He came to the Frankish throne at the early age of twenty-six.

On great occasions, when he sat on his throne, Charlemagne put on a splendid robe embroidered with gold. On his head he wore a gold crown, studded with jewels. In his right hand he held a sword, and in his left a small globe, to show, perhaps, that he intended to rule the world. He issued many laws to bring about justice and peace and prosperity among his people.

Charlemagne was the greatest general of his age. To protect his frontiers, and to check the attacks of the German tribes on the Franks, he began a series of campaigns

which lasted thirty years, against the wild pagan Saxons, who lived a life of robbery and piracy in the forests and swamps along the Ems and the Elbe rivers and the North Sea. He finally conquered them and induced their king to be baptized. Christianity took the place of the old heathen

THE EMPIRE OF CHARLEMAGNE

religion with its frequent human sacrifices. In this way the Saxons became an important part of the Frankish kingdom.

What Charlemagne did for his People

Charlemagne established towns, constructed canals and bridges, built splendid churches, public buildings, and monasteries, founded missions, and led the people to ac-

cept a life of peace and security. At this time, which was near the close of the eighth century, the Greek emperor held his throne at Constantinople, but the Roman Empire had been laid low for centuries, the great cities built by the Romans were in ruins, and barbaric chiefs or kings ruled by force most of the tribes and nations of Western Europe. War was the common condition of men, and nations were constantly attacking each other in their search for plunder. There was little trade, for the highways were beset with robbers, and the only places where life and property seemed secure were the monasteries.

Charlemagne saw these terrible conditions, and in his great mind worked out plans to bring peace and unity to Europe under his strong rule. He turned his attention to Italy, where the Lombards, who still held the northern part of that country, were constantly plundering and burning the cities and towns, and were even attacking the city of Rome. Charlemagne marched into Italy and defeated them. He crossed into Spain also, and drove back the Mohammedans who were trying to seize all that country.

On Charlemagne's return to France, the rear guard of his army was under the command of Roland, his nephew, the most famous knight of France. With Roland was another brave knight, Oliver, who had been his boyhood friend. While marching through a narrow, heavily wooded pass in the Pyrenees, the rear guard was attacked by the Saracens and the natives of the province. The main army was far ahead, but Roland had a magic horn which could be heard, according to the story, sixty miles away. When Oliver saw from a height the vast numbers of the enemy that were gathering on every side, he urged Roland to blow his horn for aid from Charlemagne.

In his pride Roland refused to do so, believing that he and his soldiers could defeat any number sent against them. He was mistaken, for he saw his brave knights falling by hundreds all round him. At last he blew his horn, but it was too late. When Charlemagne reached the spot, every man of his rear guard had been killed, and Roland and his friend Oliver were found among the slain. The story of this battle is called the Song of Roland; it was one of the most famous poems of the Middle Ages.

In his long reign Charlemagne waged more than fifty campaigns, and step by step increased the territory under his rule until he governed all the area of modern France, Switzerland, Belgium, Holland, half of Germany, and parts of Austria, Hungary, Italy, and Spain.

While thus engaged in frequent wars, Charlemagne tried to improve the people in every way. At his meals he had read aloud to him histories and the stories of ancient kings. He opened schools in the cathedrals and monasteries. At his own palace he had a famous school under the direction of a celebrated English teacher and monk, named Alcuin, whom he had invited to come from the monastery in York, in England, one of the great centers of learning in the world. Charlemagne ordered manuscripts to be collected and copied, and drew up rules to guide the schools of his kingdom.

Charlemagne's fame as a wise and just ruler spread so far that the famous Haroun-al-Rashid (or Aaron the Just), caliph of Bagdad and the hero of the Arabian Nights, sent him, as a present, a clock which struck the hours, and an elephant, which greatly interested the Franks, as they had never seen one before.

THE EMPEROR CHARLEMAGNE

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the appearance of Charlemagne.
2. Tell some of Charlemagne's reforms.
3. Who were Roland and Oliver?
4. What did Charlemagne do for education?

THE KNIGHTING OF ROLAND AND OLIVER

CHAPTER XLV

CHARLEMAGNE CROWNED EMPEROR

Charlemagne becomes Emperor

Although Charlemagne had defeated the Lombards of Italy in his campaign against them, they soon rose in revolt and besieged Rome. The Pope asked Charlemagne for aid, and he again crossed the Alps and utterly defeated them. He now took the title of King of the Lombards, and, like his father, he became Patrician of Rome, which meant he was at all times to protect the Eternal City from any enemies that might march against it.

On Christmas Day, in the year 800, he was attending Mass at Saint Peter's, in Rome, and as he knelt at the altar, Pope Leo the Third placed on his head a crown, saying as he did so, "Long life to Charles Augustus, crowned of God, Emperor of the Romans." The words were caught up by the multitude present, and Charlemagne was hailed with joy as the emperor of the Western Roman Empire.

When Charlemagne died, after nearly fifty years of rule, his body was placed in full imperial robes upon a throne. His crown was on his head, and his scepter was in his hand. The book of the gospels was open on his lap. The vault was sealed, and remained so for a hundred and seventy-six years, when another emperor ordered the tomb to be opened. The body was still perfectly preserved. It was now placed in a vault, and the golden ornaments were removed.

The Temporal Power of the Popes

In the year 754, Pippin, the father of Charlemagne, at the request of the ruling Pontiff, had gone to Italy to protect him against the Lombards. Pippin defeated them, taking possession of Ravenna and twenty-one other places. He made a gift of all he had won to the Holy See, and laid the keys of the conquered cities on the tomb of Saint Peter, in Rome. The Popes already held Rome and the neighboring territory. They also owned large landed estates elsewhere, which had been given to them by the emperors and by wealthy Christians. This was the foundation of the temporal power of the Popes.

Charlemagne not only confirmed his father's gift to the Holy See, but added more territory to it. For eleven hundred years the Patrimony of Saint Peter, as the territory of the Catholic Church in Italy was called, was ruled by the Popes. It was not until 1870 that this territory was seized and became a part of united Italy.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the coronation of Charlemagne in 800.

2. What was the origin of the temporal power of the Popes?

3. In what year were the States of the Church united to the crown of Italy?

4. What things are in your schoolroom that would not be found in a school of Charlemagne?

5. Can you tell why Latin was in general use by lawyers, clergymen, and scholars in the Middle Ages?

6. If you went to Italy today, what language should you find generally spoken there?

CHAPTER XLVI

THE ANGLES AND SAXONS IN BRITAIN

The Romans in Britain

When the barbarians of the north began to break through the frontiers of the Roman Empire, the Roman legions were called back from Britain (A.D. 410), where they had been standing guard from the days of the emperor Claudius, nearly four hundred years before. During that time the Romans had built, in southern Britain, splendid roads, houses, and baths, and had opened valuable mines. They had easily conquered the southern part of Britain, but they were unable to control the northern part. They built, therefore, walls across the island at the highlands of Scotland to keep out the northern tribes. The Romans named the country north of the wall Caledonia.

The native Britons were a branch of the Celtic race, like the Gauls, the Irish, and the Scots. They suffered terribly from the attacks of the tribes of the north. They asked assistance from Rome, but the Romans could not send aid, as they were fighting the Goths at home. Then the Britons called in the Jutes to help them. The Jutes were a German tribe from Jutland, in the Danish peninsula. The Jutes came under their leaders Hengist and Horsa, in 449, and gave them valuable aid; but these foreigners liked the country so well that they decided to stay there.

The Germans invade Britain

Other German tribes came also. One of them was the Angles, from whom England, or Angleland, was named. Another German tribe was the Saxons. They were fond of piracy, and in their long ships, driven by oars, they swept along the coasts of northern Europe. With fire

REMAINS OF OLD ROMAN BATHS IN ENGLAND

and sword they entered England, driving the Britons before them. They burned churches, houses, and buildings of all kinds, and slaughtered the people. They destroyed the monasteries, with their valuable books, and put the monks to death. As they liked the country, they also decided to stay and make their homes there.

The Britons tried in vain to drive them out, but were defeated. Some of the Britons fled to the mountains in the west, and others went to France, where a province is

named Brittany from them. Most of them, however, stayed, and were made subjects of their conquerors.

Since each of the invading German tribes was under its own leader, many small kingdoms were founded. These kingdoms fought bitterly against each other, and carried on their wars with great cruelty. The captives that were not murdered on the spot were sold and sent abroad into slavery.

Augustine in Britain

The German tribes in Britain brought their own gods with them, for they still worshiped Woden and Thor. To convert them to Christianity, Pope Gregory the Great sent missionaries to England under Augustine, who had been a member of a Benedictine monastery in Rome.

Augustine landed (A.D. 597) with forty monks in southeastern England in the pagan kingdom of Ethelbert, whose wife Bertha was a Christian, for she was a French princess. Ethelbert, through his wife's influence, aided the missionaries, and was himself baptized with many of his people.

At Canterbury, the king's residence, Augustine founded a monastery and school, and became the first archbishop. Later Theodore, of Tarsus, the home of Saint Paul, was appointed archbishop. He was Greek by birth, and had been educated in Athens. Under his direction the school at Canterbury was enlarged. Greek culture was developed, and the school became a great center of learning. Dioceses were erected, monasteries and schools were built in the fen lands of Peterborough, Ely, Malmesbury, and many other places, and the Christian faith was spread far and wide.

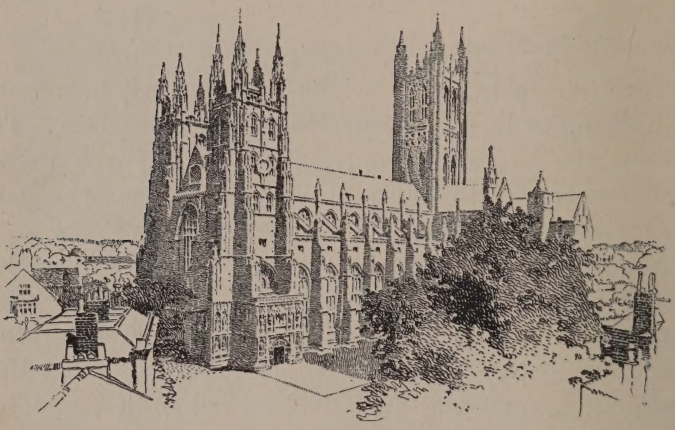
QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. How long were the Romans in Britain?

2. What did they do to protect themselves from the tribes of the north?

3. Why did the German tribes come to England?

4. What Pope sent missionaries to England?



CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL

CHAPTER XLVII

THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE

Henry the Fowler

During his lifetime Charlemagne had ruled parts of Germany, but at his death there was no single German nation. Instead there were five duchies, as the leading states of Germany were called. These duchies were Saxony, Franconia, Swabia, Bavaria, and Lorraine. There were, also, border districts like Bohemia.

The German states were surrounded by barbarous nations or tribes that constantly attacked them. The Hungarians invaded Bavaria, the Russians or Slavs pillaged the northwestern districts, and the Danes moved southward against the German frontier.

When Conrad of Franconia, king of the German duchies, was dying, he recommended the election of Henry, Duke of Saxony, as his successor. Henry had been Conrad's enemy, but Conrad believed he would prove to be the ablest ruler of the German peoples, and would unite them against their enemies. Conrad asked his courtiers to carry to Henry the scepter, crown, sword, and purple mantle, as a sign of his selection as king.

There is a story that when the courtiers sought Henry, they found him in the forests of the Hartz mountains at his favorite sport of hunting with a falcon, and studying and training birds instead of spending his time with the courtiers of the palace.

Henry was naturally much surprised to see the courtiers coming to him. When he heard that Conrad, although his enemy, had recommended him as the best man to unite and rule the Germans, he bowed his head, and consented to serve his people. He is known in history as Henry the Fowler, the first great Saxon king of the Germans.

HENRY OFFERED THE CROWN

Henry the Fowler made peace with the Hungarians, who for years had been burning and pillaging German towns and carrying off the people into captivity. Henry agreed to pay them five thousand pieces of gold every year for ten years. Many objected to this plan, declaring it was cowardly, but Henry had his way, and year after year the tribute was paid. All this time, however, Henry was building strong forts on the Hungarian border, and

strengthening his army. He organized especially the cavalry, for this had been the weak part of the Saxon army in fighting the skillful Hungarian horsemen.

When the tenth year arrived, the messengers came from Hungary for the usual tribute. Henry threw at their feet a dead dog, and said, "That is all you will get."

The messengers hurried back to report the insult, and the Hungarian army was soon on the march to attack Henry, but they were badly defeated.

Henry conquered territory of the Slavs, and this land became the modern state of Prussia. He encouraged knighthood, and constructed walled cities and towns to protect the merchants. He made a treaty with the king of the Franks, which regulated, to the satisfaction of both, the western boundary of Germany.

Otto the Great

Henry was succeeded by his son Otto the Great, who ruled with great ability for thirty-seven years. Otto utterly defeated (A.D. 955) the Hungarians, who now settled down to a peaceful agricultural life and became Christians. He conquered Denmark and Bohemia.

Italy at this time was in distress from the warring peoples in the peninsula, where dukes, counts, and kings fought each other. The Mohammedans held Sicily, and the Greek emperor claimed the whole peninsula.

Otto was called in by one of the contestants. He went across the Alps, routed the opposing armies, and had himself crowned king of Italy. Troubles at home, however, called him back to Germany.

Ten years later he returned to Italy to protect the Pope from his enemies. On Candlemas Day (A.D. 962) he was

crowned emperor by the Pope. This was the beginning of the Holy Roman Empire. It sought to reëstablish the idea of the Roman Empire of the West; it was called holy because the emperor was crowned by the Pope.

The Holy Roman Empire was somewhat similar to the empire of Charlemagne, a hundred and fifty years earlier, except that it did not include France.

Instead of allowing the people of Italy to build up states of their own, the German emperors were constantly invading Italy and neglecting their own territories. The plan was an unfortunate one for the German rulers, for it not only kept them constantly at war with Italian cities and states, but brought them into conflict with the Popes, since they claimed rights and privileges which the Popes declared belonged only to them. For centuries the pages of history are filled with the stories of the serious troubles between the emperors and the Popes.

The Patriot Swiss

While the German emperors were gradually building up their nation they held under their rule parts of Switzerland. In the mountainous districts around Lake Lucerne were three cantons or states, called the forest cantons, where the hardy mountaineers lived in peace and in independence. They met in town meetings and elected their own officers. They acknowledged the German emperor as their overlord and paid him tribute.

In 1273 the crown of Germany passed to Rudolph, head of the Hapsburg family. Rudolph paid little or no attention to his claims in Italy for he said, "As in the story of the lions' den in the fable, I see many tracks leading into it, but none out." He therefore turned his attention to

the Swiss, a step which was unfortunate for this freedom-loving people. He sent cruel governors to rule the cities of the various cantons.

Under Rudolph's successor, Albert, the governors became ever more and more tyrannical. They ruled the Swiss peoples with an iron hand.

WILLIAM TELL

To regain their liberties, the various cantons in 1291 formed a confederation to resist the rule of the oppressor. Later other cantons joined them in the long struggle for freedom.

One of the governors, named Gessler, erected a pole and placed on it a cap. He ordered everyone passing the pole to salute the hat. According to the legend, William Tell, a famous archer, passed by without saluting. Gessler sent for him and as a punishment ordered him to shoot an apple from the head of his boy. When Tell refused Gessler said unless he did so he would put both Tell and the boy to death. Tell thereupon took two arrows, one of which he hid under his shirt. Placing the boy

against a tree, Tell carefully aimed and the arrow sped with unerring flight directly to the apple. The second arrow accidentally dropped to the ground. "What was that for?" Gessler asked. Tell refused to answer, but Gessler insisted, promising his life would be spared. "Had

TELL'S CHAPEL

I hurt my child, my second arrow would have been directed at your heart, and it would not have missed." Gessler, in fury, said that while Tell's life would be spared, he would be cast into a dungeon for the rest of his days.

While Tell was being rowed across the lake to his prison, he suddenly leaped from the boat to the shore and escaped to the forest. Later, according to the story, while Gessler was passing through the woods Tell, from his hiding place, let fly his arrow at him. As he rolled off his horse, he cried, "It is Tell's arrow," and died. From that day Tell has been a national hero of the Swiss.

The Swiss fought many battles against both the Austrians and the French. In the battle of Sempach (1386) the Swiss, with their short weapons, could not break the Austrian ranks, armed as they were with long spears. There is a story that a Swiss hero, Arnold von Winkelried, suddenly rushed into the center of the Austrian lines and gathered a dozen spears in his arms. As he fell pierced by the enemy's weapons his fellow countrymen rushed into the gap and won the victory which later resulted in the founding of the Swiss republic.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Why was Henry of Germany called the Fowler?

2. Was Henry or his courtiers right in the matter of paying tribute to the Hungarians?

3. How did the Holy Roman Empire secure its name?

4. Was it a benefit or detriment to Germany?

5. Tell the story of the national hero of Switzerland.

6. What famous world body has its headquarters in Switzerland today?

7. A celebrated carving has been cut in a rock on Lake Lucerne. Where is a great monument being cut on a mountain side in our country?

CHAPTER XLVIII

THE RISE OF FEUDALISM

What is meant by Feudalism

While the strong arm of the Roman emperor ruled Europe, there was peace and security for life and property. With the fall of the empire the weak states were not able to hold in check the lawless bands that roamed throughout Western Europe, or to protect the weak against the strong. By his powerful army Charlemagne had restored peace for a time. On his death his empire was handed down to his son Louis, who reigned for twenty-six years. On the death of Louis a war broke out between his three sons. After severe battles a peace was agreed on at Verdun (A.D. 843), the spot so famous in the great World War. By this peace the empire was divided into three parts. From this division arose in time France, Germany, and Italy and the map of modern Europe. These governments were very weak, and there arose in these countries nobles who became as powerful as their kings, and in some cases became even more powerful. These nobles formed smaller kingdoms, or dukedoms, so that in two hundred years instead of one great empire, as in the time of Charlemagne, there were a hundred or more small states ruled by dukes, counts, barons, or earls, who raised their own armies, gathered their own taxes, conducted their own courts of justice, and coined their own money.

Although these rulers were independent, they gave their allegiance, no matter how powerful they were, to the ruling king, under a system called feudalism. This word is derived from the Late Latin *feudum*, which means an estate in land.

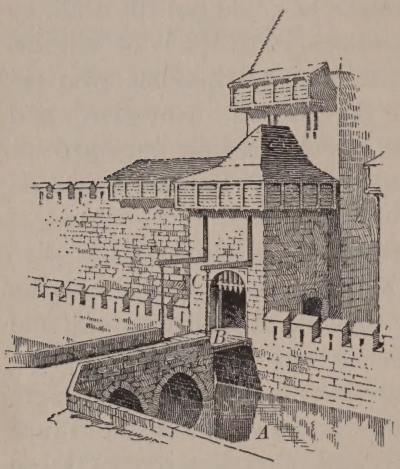
Feudalism arose from the idea that the king owned all the land of his kingdom. Since he could not till it all, he granted, under certain conditions, large tracts of it to his nobles. Kneeling before the king, each noble who received land swore to serve the king as his overlord, and to furnish a certain number of soldiers fully equipped for war. He swore to go to war himself if the king called on him to do so.

Each great noble in turn gave portions of his land to persons of lower rank, who were also required to take an oath of obedience to their noble as their overlord, and to perform military and other service. The noble or overlord always agreed to protect his vassals, as they were called, in case of danger. The lord's vassals might in turn grant some of their land to still other lesser tenants; so that in a kingdom beginning with the king there was a series of lords and vassals, one below another. By this system every freeman was attached to someone above him, to whom he was bound to render service of some kind. No one was entirely free from feudal service.

The Feudal Castle

When the king gave land to a great noble, the noble frequently erected a mighty castle, which was in fact a fortress. At times this castle was built on a rugged height, looking for miles far and wide over the country, and was protected by strong walls.

If the castle was built on a plain, a moat or wide ditch was dug around the outer wall, and was filled with water. To enter the castle, one was compelled to cross a heavy wooden drawbridge, which was raised or lowered by heavy chains. At the entrance were thick doors, built of strong timber, and above was suspended an iron grating, called a portcullis, which could be instantly dropped to block the way.



FORTIFIED GATE OF A MEDIEVAL CASTLE

The moat (*A*); the drawbridge (*B*); the portcullis (*C*)

Often there were acres of ground within the castle walls, and the inclosure was a little world in itself. Here lived the men who cared for the armor, made the clothes and shoes, and tended the horses. There were, besides, cooks, maids, candle makers, pages, jesters, clerks, and others who were necessary to care for the affairs of the lord. There were kennels of dogs, and stalls for the heavy horses used in war and for the lighter horses used in hunting.

As a rule, the castles were gloomy and uncomfortable. The rooms were dark and damp. Only narrow slits let in the light, for it would have been dangerous to have wide windows through which an enemy might send an arrow or heavy ball or stone. Glass was not in general use, and there was no heat in the rooms except in the main hall.

The skins of the wolf, bear, and fox were placed on the floor for warmth, and in the dining hall rushes were in use instead of carpets. On the walls were hung tapestries, often woven by the mistress of the castle and by her daughters.

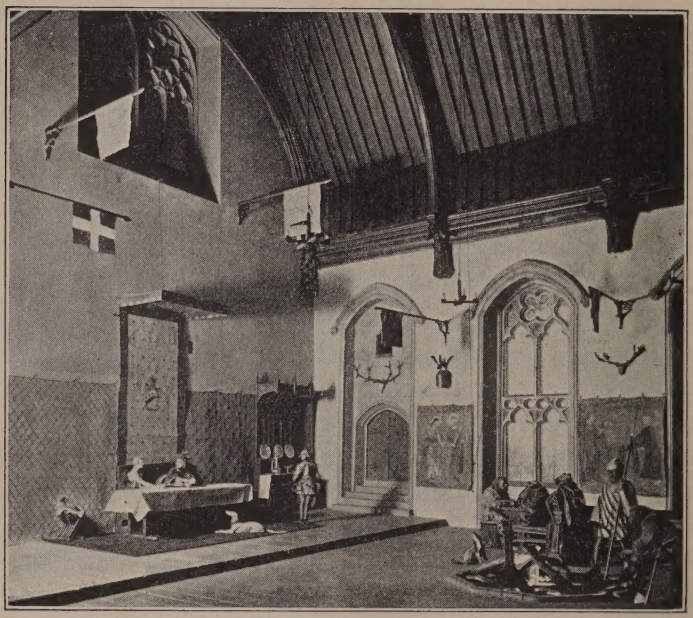
Life in a Feudal Castle

Many of the foods which we are accustomed to were not known in feudal days. There were neither potatoes, sugar, tea, nor coffee. Honey was used in place of sugar. People had only the fruits that grew near them, as there was no general method of moving foods from place to place, and there was no system to preserve them. In fact it was difficult to go far; the roads and bridges had been left to decay, and were so bad that much of the travel was on horseback. The nobles often charged heavy toll on everybody passing over the roads or using the rivers in front of their property.

There were of course no electric lights, gas, or kerosene lamps. Light was secured from candles or torches made from rushes. Inside the castle walls there were storehouses for grain and other foods and a well of water to supply the castle in case of siege. Many castles had a small chapel.

In the great baronial hall the family of the lord lived for the most part, and here the daughters were taught to spin and weave, while the sons were trained to be knights. Here the meals were served, the food being brought from the large kitchen close by. As game was very abundant, the nobles had many courses at their dinners, deer, boar's head, venison pie, pork, beef, lamb, ducks, quail, partridges, and peacocks being some of the dishes provided.

In most of the great halls there appeared from time to time a wandering minstrel, with a pack containing his few clothes and his rude harp. He was gladly welcomed, and sang at dinner the songs all loved to hear. Poets at times also formed a part of the family circle, and composed songs



BARONIAL HALL OF THE CASTLE

and poems for great occasions. Occasionally some of the poets joined together, and wandered from town to town and from castle to castle.

For safety the noble often lived in the innermost and strongest part of the castle, called the donjon, or keep. The walls of the donjon were of heavy stone many feet thick. The heavy doors were barred with iron bands.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the plan of feudalism?

2. What were the relations between a lord and his vassal?

3. Describe a medieval castle.

4. What was the difference between the serfs, villeins, and slaves?

5. How does a farmer of today differ from a medieval serf?

6. Tell some of the things to be found on a farm at present that could not be found on a farm in the Middle Ages.

7. The black death of the Middle Ages was probably the bubonic plague. The cause of this has been discovered within a few years. Find out the cause.

ATTACKING A WALLED CITY

CHAPTER XLIX

LIFE IN FEUDAL TIMES

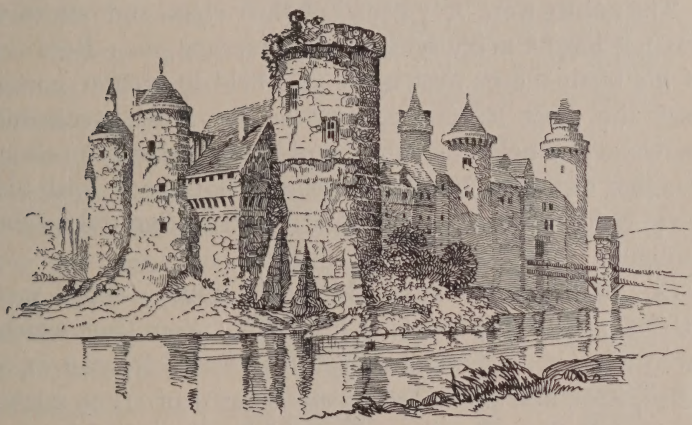
War and Peace in Feudal Days

There was constant trouble and war among the nobles of Western Europe. In case of war a lookout on the castle tower could see at a distance armed men rapidly drawing near. An alarm would be sounded on the trumpet; the men of the castle would spring to arms; the drawbridge would be drawn up.

The castle walls were in a zigzag style. They were often twenty feet thick and fifty feet high. A tower was built at each corner. The outer edge of the wall was a few feet higher than the rest. It had openings to allow the soldiers to shoot at those below them, while they themselves were protected. As gunpowder and cannon did not come into use until later, heavy arrows were shot from bows which were so powerful that they had to be drawn by a machine. Burning oil and hot water were poured on the heads of the attacking force, and large rocks were thrown down on them.

The attacking party placed ladders against the wall to scale it. They also used moving towers, hurling engines, and a battering ram, which was a large, heavy beam with an iron end shaped like a ram's head. This beam, swinging by a chain, was dashed against the wall with great force. If the castle could not be taken quickly, the enemy withdrew or settled down to a siege, hoping to starve out the defenders.

To prevent this constant warfare, and to do away with armed combats between single nobles or knights, about the tenth century the Church issued decrees called the Truce of God and the Peace of God. The Truce of God forbade all warfare from the evening of Wednesday of each week to the following Monday morning. It also forbade war during the holy seasons of Advent and Lent.



A MEDIEVAL CASTLE

This reduced very much the number of days in the year when warfare could be carried on. The Peace of God forbade, at any time, warfare or attack on the Church or clergy, or on women, peasants, crusaders, and pilgrims, or on merchants traveling from place to place. Although these decrees were not always observed, they helped to put a curb on the warlike spirit of the nobles, and they protected the helpless and the poor.

Even earlier, in the days when all Europe was in a disturbed state from the invasion of the barbarians and from the cruelty and warlike spirit of the nobles, the Church

founded the right of sanctuary. Under this right a person fleeing to a church, which was sacred ground, would be protected there for a certain number of days, and could not be illtreated or removed even to be punished for crime.

The Feudal Noble

The nobles were very proud of their class, and one who was not born a noble seldom could become one. Because of his birth the poorest noble was held in greater honor than the most learned scholar or the most successful merchant. A noble thought the only honorable profession was that of arms. He always rode on horseback, with his horse richly decorated and his armor reflecting the bright sunlight.

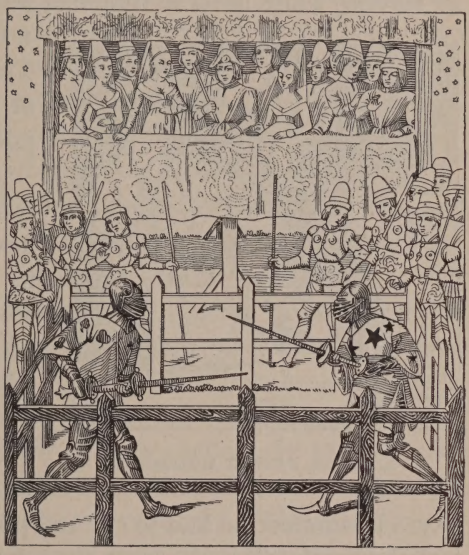
One of the rights which the feudal noble claimed was that of establishing courts of justice, a custom from which arose a peculiar method of settling cases. Instead of a judge, jury, and witnesses, a man accused of crime might use one of three methods. He might call on people who knew him, and they would swear to his good life and habits.

Again, he might use a method called ordeal. He would carry a hot iron bar in his bare hand for a distance, or would plunge his arm into hot oil or boiling water. The hand was at once bandaged; if at the end of three days the wound was healed, the man was declared innocent. Sometimes he was bound hand and foot and thrown into the water. If he floated, he was held to be guilty; if he sank, he was rescued, and was declared innocent.

Another method was trial by battle. The accused person or a champion fought his accuser on horseback or on foot; if he won, he was deemed to be innocent.

The Feudal Tenants

The tenants on a great noble's estate were of various grades. One group was called villeins. They gave up their land to the overlord that they might be protected by him, for at this time there was little protection for the unarmed small landholder against the marauders and barbarians who roamed at will, plundering and killing. When the villein gave up his land, the overlord gave it back to him, but merely for its use; for the land never again came into the villein's actual possession. The villein felt, however, that it was better to live as a tenant in peace and security, protected by a great lord with armed forces, than to be in constant fear for his life and property. When the villein gave up his land, he knelt bareheaded before the lord and his wife, and placing his hands within those of his protector, swore to be faithful to him. The lord in turn promised to protect his villein and his family, and he handed the villein a twig to show that he was giving back the land to him for his use.



TRIAL BY COMBAT

Serfdom

Another group of tenants was the serfs. They were by law bound to remain on their farms, and could not leave them even if they wished to do so. If a farm were sold, they were sold with it, like the houses and trees. They could not, however, be removed from the farm, or sold as slaves. They lived in thatched mud houses which had no floors or chimneys. They wore the coarsest of clothes, and ate the poorest of food.

A VASSAL PAYING HOMAGE

All tenants of an estate were compelled to have their corn ground in the lord's mill, and to bake their bread in his oven, paying him for the service. The serf had to plough, sow, and harrow the landlord's fields without pay. In summer he had to cut and pile the hay, and carry it to the landlord's barns, even though his own grain needed to be cut. In the spring he was compelled to give the lord one sheep in every ten of his flock; in September he gave one pig out of every eight; and at Christmas he gave a certain number of fowl.

Besides these services and gifts, if the lord was putting up a new building, the tenant was compelled to haul stone and lumber, and help the masons and carpenters.

When an injury was done to a tenant, it was of little use to complain. A serf might spend weeks raising corn

and caring for it, and if the lord, while hunting with his crowd of retainers, tore through the fields and leveled and destroyed the corn so necessary for the life of the serf's family, there was no redress. The serf had to make gifts when the noble's eldest son was made a knight, when the eldest daughter of the lord was married, when the lord went on a crusade, or was taken captive and had to be ransomed.

Serfdom lasted for ages, and although the serfs at times rebelled, they could not change their condition. Hundreds of years later the revolt against the system blazed forth in France with such force that it led to the French Revolution (1789), when it was completely destroyed.

Another class under feudalism was the slaves, who had no rights whatever, and whose life was miserable indeed.

Feudalism lasted for five hundred years, and passed away for various reasons. The towns grew in wealth through commerce and manufacturing, and refused to submit to the despotic nobles. The kings grew gradually in power, and destroyed the feudal nobles one by one, at times pulling down their mighty castles. In the crusades many nobles lost their lives and property, and the tenants once more secured their own property. The invention of gunpowder made the armed peasant a stronger man than the knight or noble on horseback, and the use of cannon made it easy to destroy the great frowning towers and walls of the nobles' castles.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the Truce of God?
2. What was the right of sanctuary?
3. Name the good points of feudalism.

4. What caused the downfall of feudalism?

5. How does our court trial differ from one in feudal times?

6. The military engines used in the Middle Ages could hurl heavy stones against a castle wall from a distance of a quarter of a mile. How far from Paris was the famous long-range German gun in the World War?

A FEAST IN THE CASTLE

CHAPTER L

KING ARTHUR; CHIVALRY

The Story of Chivalry

Among the early British kings of England there was said to be one named Arthur, who lived in the sixth century. King Arthur's history is so full of myths and legends, however, that it is difficult to know if such a king really lived. According to the stories handed down to us, an English king named Uther died, and there was no one to take the vacant throne. The nobles of England were therefore called together to choose a king. At the meeting place they saw a large square stone on which was an iron anvil. Buried in this anvil was a large sword. On the stone in golden letters were the words that the throne would go to the one who could draw out the sword. All the nobles tried, but no one could even move it except Arthur, who easily drew it out. All knelt before him and hailed him as their king.

King Arthur gathered the leading nobles of the country about him in his great banquet hall, in the city of Camelot. Here he had a famous round table, where a hundred and fifty could sit and eat. Those who sat at the table had received the honor of knighthood. For this reason they were called the Knights of the Round Table. Clad in armor, with spear and shield, the knights often went forth on splendid horses to undo any wrongs existing in the land.

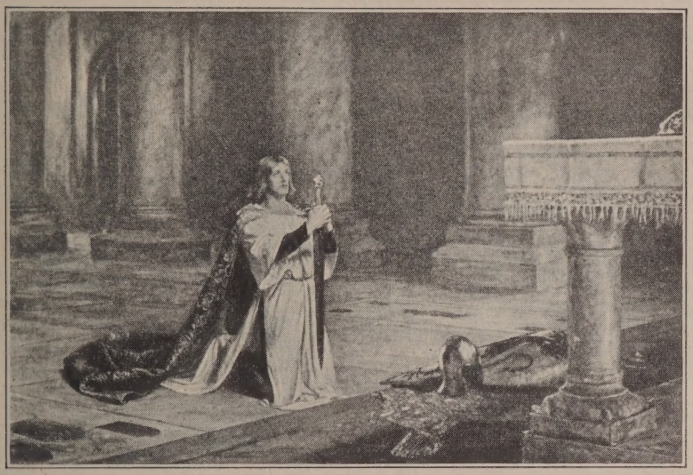
Page, Squire, and Knight

Knighthood arose from feudalism, under which, as we have seen, the knights formed a higher class. Whether in England or on the continent of Europe, knighthood was in general the same. Knighthood was sometimes granted to a soldier for heroism on the field of battle; as a rule, however, it was attained only after long preparation. About the age of seven a boy became a page at the court of the king or of some noble. He was taught the rules of chivalry, as the system was called. He served the ladies of the court, and in this way was taught grace of manner, and courtesy and kindness to women. He ran errands for the lord, waited on his table, and polished his armor. He was taught to ride and to read. He learned how to play musical instruments.

When the boy reached the age of fourteen years, he became a squire. He now gave his entire time to looking after the affairs of his lord. He cared for his horses and armor, waited on him at table, and went with him on the hunt. In battle he carried an extra spear or lance, and stayed near his lord to be of service in case of need. The young squire was himself learning to use the spear and sword, and to defend himself with his shield.

At the age of twenty-one the young man reached knighthood. When this was to be given to him, he prepared for it by spending the night in prayer before the altar. His sword and shield lay on the steps before him. He was now called before the king or his own lord, and placing his hands in those of the king or lord, took a vow to be faithful to him, to protect women, orphans, and religion, and to be brave and just. The king struck him gently on the shoulder with the flat side of his sword, saying,

"Arise, Sir Knight! Be brave and loyal!" A belt was clasped round his waist, spurs were placed on his heels, and his arms of shield and spear were given to him. He now mounted a beautiful horse and, before the assembled court, showed his skill in handling him. As a knight in full armor was completely covered, he wore a crest on



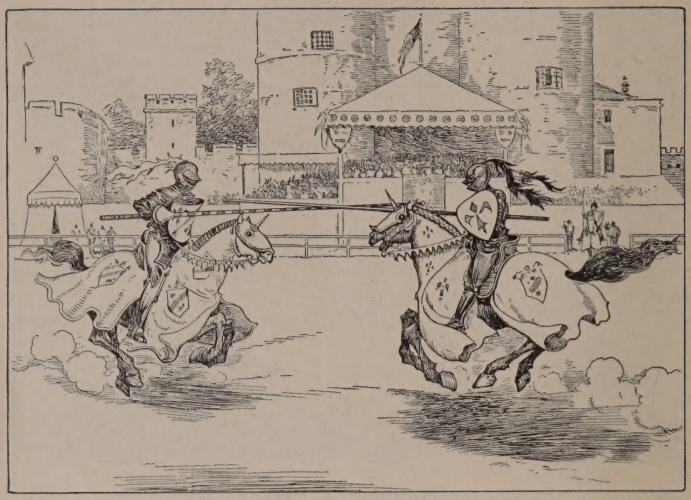
THE KNIGHT'S VIGIL

his helmet and on his shield a design to tell who he was. This is the origin of the so-called coat-of-arms, a custom which is still in use in countries where there is a king.

A knight wore a coat of mail, which had a hood to protect the head and neck. Later iron armor with an iron helmet was used. On account of the great weight of the armor, the fully equipped knight required a very heavy horse to carry him to battle. Often he was unable to rise if he fell from his horse and had to be raised to his feet again by his attendant.

The Tournament

To amuse themselves when there was no war, especially on great occasions such as knighting the eldest son of the king or lord, knights held a tournament. On the day appointed, knights in full armor came from far and near on their splendid horses. The meeting place was inclosed



A TOURNAMENT

by a stand, where sat the king or lord, the ladies of the court, and other spectators. Each knight bore the colors of his lady.

At a signal given by trumpets two knights on horseback ran at each other at full speed with blunt lances, each trying to unhorse the other. If a knight was thrown to the ground, he lost not only the contest, but his horse and weapons. At times a knight was killed with the force of the blow.

Chivalry was of great benefit to the women of the ages in which it thrived. Up to this time they had been held in a more or less inferior position; in fact, in the Orient, Greece, and Rome they had few rights at all. Chivalry with its exalted ideals, aided by the teachings of the church, raised woman to a position of dignity and honor. The mistress of the castle presided at the table in the baronial hall, and accompanied her husband on the chase. The daughters were taught to read, to dance, to sew, to

HAWKING SCENE

From an old manuscript

embroider, and to sing. Every knight was sworn to protect the women of noble birth, and he was supposed to have one woman to whom above all others he vowed life-long service and devotion. In those rude ages it was a great boon to women to have the protection of the powerful, armed knightly class.

Almost all knights and ladies were fond of hawking parties. The hawk or falcon was carefully trained to fly, when released by its owner, after pigeons, quail, ducks, and other birds, and to return at the call of its owner. Going forth on horseback, the knights and ladies carried hawks held by a silver chain or leather strap fastened to

the wrist. The eyes of the hawk were covered or hooded. Dogs were sent on ahead to start the game from its shelter. As a bird arose, the hood was removed from the eyes of the hawk, it was released, and at once darting forth rose above its prey. With a swift downward sweep it sank its sharp talons into the bird, striking it with its strong beak and killing it. The owner, with a whistle, called the hawk back. The bird, released by the hawk, fell to the ground, where it was recovered by a dog, who brought it to his master.

The system of chivalry had no doubt a powerful effect in keeping peace in those early days and in guarding the lives of young men. It taught them to be brave, just, truthful, and loyal to their God, their king, and their lord. It taught them to respect women, and to go forth against the heathen enemies of their religion. Certain forms of knighthood have come down to this day.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Tell the story of Arthur's winning of the throne.

2. How did the young boy reach knighthood?

3. What was the coat-of-arms?

4. What benefit came from knighthood?

5. Describe a tournament.

6. When we speak of a chivalrous deed or person, what does the word come from?

7. On many public buildings and colleges you can see coats-of-arms carved. What was the origin of this custom?

8. Large gloves called gauntlets were in use in hawking, to protect the hand against the sharp claws of the bird. Where are large gloves used now as a protection to the hand?

CHAPTER LI

ALFRED THE GREAT

Alfred and the Northmen

The noblest of the early kings of England was Alfred the Great, who began his reign in the year 871. As a boy, he studied very hard to learn the difficult language of his country. He served with great bravery in the wars which his three brothers, who sat on the throne before him, waged against their foes. The kingdom of England was being attacked continually by the Danish or Norse pirates, who in their low, black boats with high dragon prow and raven flag swept swiftly from place to place, killing the people and burning their houses. These were the famous Northmen who later sailed to Ireland and Greenland and landed on the coast of North America.

As soon as Alfred came to the throne, at the age of twenty-two, he resolved to put an end to these raids. He built up at once a navy to fight the pirates, and at times won a victory over them. He organized an army, and fought battle after battle, most of which he lost. After these defeats he had to flee with some of his followers to the woods and swamps, and to hide there all the long cold winter. One day, according to a story, he entered a cowherd's hut for shelter and food. The wife of the cowherd asked him to watch the bread she was baking, while she busied herself elsewhere. Alfred, thinking of his great troubles, forgot the bread, and it was badly burned.

The cowherd's wife gave him a sharp scolding for his carelessness. A story is told that Alfred, disguised as a singer, entered the Danish camp with his harp and played for the amusement of the soldiers. He carefully noted the defenses of the camp and the numbers there. This knowledge he was able later to put to good use.

KING ALFRED AT THE DANISH CAMP

In spite of his defeats, Alfred never gave up, and at last conquered the Danes in an all-day battle (A.D. 878) and forced them to surrender. They agreed to give up fighting and to become Christians if given land to live on. This was done, and a large district of northeastern England was turned over to the Danes. This region was named the Danelaw. Later, Alfred and his sons were able to regain a large part of the Danelaw.

Alfred, Father of his People

Alfred was a wise ruler. He gathered the laws of his people into one code, that the people might know them and live up to them, as they were glad to do. He opened elementary schools for the children, where they might learn their native English tongue. He called scholars from Europe to teach in his university. He caused books to be copied, and he himself translated books from the Latin into English for his people, as there were few books at this time in English. Latin was the language in general use among educated men in Europe, and most books were therefore written in that language. By printing books in English, Alfred hoped to improve the English of his people. To that end, in spite of his many duties in the camp and in his court, he translated large parts of Bede's history into English. He also translated a famous book on philosophy by Boethius, a Roman patrician of the fifth century who had been put in prison for treason, and wrote his book to console himself during the long, weary hours of his imprisonment. In translating these books Alfred laid the foundation of English prose.

Alfred rebuilt the churches, monasteries, and houses which the Danes had destroyed. He strengthened the walls of the cities and of the forts scattered over the country. He kept a standing army, but it was so arranged that at least one third of the men were always able to be at home to till the fields and to gather the harvest. His navy was made up of boats larger, swifter, and steadier than those of the Northmen. His motto of life, as he wrote, was, "While I live, I wish to live nobly, and after life to leave to the men who come after me a memory of good works."

Canute, King of England

About a century after Alfred's death the Danes again invaded England with such success that finally (A.D. 1017) Canute, a son of the Danish king, became king of England. As he also became king of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, he was the greatest of the Scandinavian kings. His courtiers told him he was so powerful that he could even stop the tides. Canute, according to the story, took his place, in the royal seat, on the shore. When the tide came in, he commanded it to stop. None the less, it came swiftly on, and Canute had to take to sudden flight. It is said he was so chagrined that he never after wore his crown.

Canute died in 1035, and his power soon fell to pieces. Seven years later Edward the Confessor, who was the son of an earlier English king, came from France and secured the throne. Danish rule of England was at an end.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Who were the vikings?

2. Describe their vessels and mode of fighting.

3. What did King Alfred do to improve the people of his kingdom?

4. If Alfred had been discovered in the Danish camp, what would have happened to him by the laws of war?

5. Who was Canute?

6. In his poem "From my Armchair" Longfellow refers to Canute's experience with the tide. Have you read the poem?

CHAPTER LII

THE NORTHMEN ON THE CONTINENT OF EUROPE

The Northmen in Europe

As early as the year 800, Charlemagne had to raise a fleet to protect his coasts against the Northmen, whose vessels sailed up the Scheldt River, in the Netherlands, and burned Antwerp. They secured here a stretch of territory for settlement.

Later they entered the valleys of the Loire, Garonne, and Seine rivers, seized Rouen, and for eleven months besieged Paris. They captured Nantes in 843. Aix-la-Chapelle fell into their hands, and they robbed the cathedral and the tomb of Charlemagne. They burned houses, barns, and public buildings far and wide, set fire to grain fields, and massacred the helpless peasants without pity.

Growing bolder, they sailed south and attacked the cities on the Spanish coast, and penetrated inland to Seville, which they captured. In 859 they again sailed to Spain and southern France, where they attacked the cities along the lower Rhone River. Soon they entered Italy. They captured one walled Italian city by pretending that they wished to give a proper funeral to one of their leaders who had died. They were given permission to bury him in the city, and the procession entered the gates. It was in reality a band of armed men, who at once attacked the people and looted the city.

About the year 859 the Swedish Northmen left their country and went eastward. They conquered the Finns, Tartars, and Slavs who lived between Lake Ladoga and the headwaters of the Dnieper River. These Swedes were called Russ by their Finnish neighbors. The Russ, under

THE NORTHMEN INVADING FRANCE

their leader Rurik, settled in Novgorod, and it is from them the great country of Russia has secured its name.

Other Swedish colonists settled in Kiev, which a few years later became the capital of the Russian kingdom.

The Russ now pushed southward to the Black Sea and even to Constantinople, where for years they formed a large bodyguard for the Eastern Greek emperors.

Gradually the name Russia was applied to the whole country. Later, however, the Slavs or Slavonic people

absorbed the Swedes in Russia, and the dukes of Moscow secured control of the land. It was from these dukes that the later rulers of Russia came.

Wherever they went the Northmen plundered the monasteries, as these buildings were unfortified and were easily

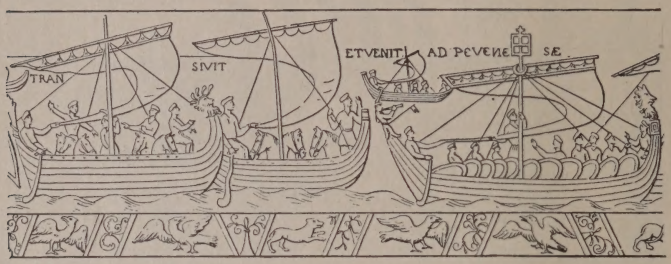
A VESSEL OF THE NORTHMEN

taken. They removed the gold and silver sacred vessels and embroidered vestments. If the monks attempted to prevent this action, they were quickly put to death.

Founding of Normandy

At last, in 911, the king of France gave to the Norse leader, Rollo, a district in northern France, in which the Northmen promised to remain in peace and protect the country, to become Christians, and to acknowledge the king of France as their overlord. The province received the name Normandy from them; and in time the Norman dukes became as powerful as kings, and their courts were famous throughout Western Europe.

In the year 1066 Edward, king of England, died. He left no child to inherit the throne. His mother had been a Norman, and he had often invited Normans to visit him. The English noblemen did not like the Normans, who were proud and looked with contempt on the English. Duke William, the ruler of Normandy, had been a visitor to England, and had been received with great favor by King Edward. In traveling through the country he had noticed how rich it was. He made up his mind to seize



NORMAN VESSELS CROSSING THE CHANNEL

From an ancient tapestry

it when the king died, and add it to his possessions in France. He claimed that on one visit the king of England had promised him the throne when he should die.

One of the leading English nobles, named Harold, had been shipwrecked on the coast of Normandy. When he was brought to the court of Duke William, he was asked to support William for the throne of England when it became vacant. The duke declared that Harold agreed to do this by laying his hand on a table. When the oath had been taken, William removed the cover and showed sacred relics. He said Harold had sworn by these relics and was now forever bound by his oath.

William the Conqueror

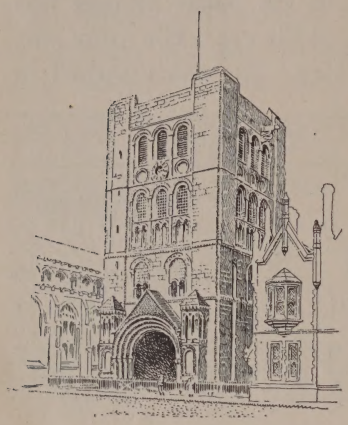
When King Edward died, Harold was chosen king by the English noblemen. When William heard this, he was angry and at once raised an army to invade England. He landed on the southern coast, near Hastings. The English, under Harold, met him. In the battle Harold was killed by an arrow, which pierced his eye. His army was routed, and William became king. He was crowned in

PART OF THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS
From an ancient tapestry

Westminster Abbey on Christmas Day, 1066. A descendant of the vikings had become king of England, and he handed down the throne to his descendants. It is interesting to note that the English kings were also dukes of Normandy, in France. This fact made them vassals of the king of France, and caused them to take a large part in the military affairs of the continent of Europe.

The Norman conquest had lasting results. The French language became the language of the court and of the nobles. English was spoken mainly by the peasants. As Latin was used not only in the church, but by scholars, the four languages Latin, French, Anglo-Saxon, and Celtic

combined to form to a large extent our present English speech. Great castles, with square towers and round arches, were built to replace the wooden halls of the English, and to control the nobles. The castles became centers for a strong Norman power. The feudal system was introduced, and the English were, to a large extent, deprived of their lands, which were given to Normans. Many of the beautiful cathedrals were built during the Norman era. While in Normandy, King William had seen feudal nobles in France with more power than the French king, and he determined that this should not happen in England. Therefore, he required every noble and landowner to take an oath of allegiance directly to him. If a noble broke his oath by starting a rebellion, he not only lost his property, but his life.



A NORMAN ARCHED GATEWAY AND TOWER

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the raids of the Northmen on France and Spain.
2. How did the French king secure peace from the Northmen?
3. What right had Duke William to the throne of England?
4. Why is the battle of Hastings one of the decisive battles of the world?
5. What effect had the Norman conquest on our language?

CHAPTER LIII

THE MAGNA CHARTA; ENGLAND AGAINST FRANCE

The Magna Charta

One of William's successors, Henry the Second, brought into England the idea of trial by jury. He called twelve men together to hear what was said about a man accused of crime. They decided whether or not he was guilty. This was a much better system than trial by ordeal, of which we have already read.

Henry was a powerful ruler. He not only held the throne of England, but owned such immense districts in France that he held more French territory than the king of France. As a result of this condition, wars between England and France were frequent.

Some years later a king named John, son of Henry the Second, ascended the throne; his brother, Richard the Lion-hearted, who had taken a large part in the third crusade, died after a short and unsuccessful reign of only ten years. John was such a tyrant that under the lead of the archbishop of Canterbury, the nobles and people at last rebelled, and in spite of his resistance forced him to sign an agreement called the Magna Charta, or Great Charter. This was in 1215, at Runnymede, near Windsor, on the Thames.

The Magna Charta meant, to a great extent, for the English what the Declaration of Independence meant for

us. This charter promised that no free man should be imprisoned, outlawed, or put to death except by consent of his fellow citizens and by the law of the land. It promised, also, that justice should not be denied to anyone, nor sold or delayed. No taxes should be laid except by consent of the Great Council, which was made up of the barons and bishops. The people of all the cities were to enjoy forever their ancient rights and customs. The rights of the clergy were to be protected, and the dues of feudal lords were fixed at certain sums. The leading result of the Magna Charta was the check it put on the king's power.

Beginning of the English Parliament

Fifty years later, in 1265, Simon de Montfort, a noble, who was ruling in place of the king, made the beginning of representative government when he called the lords, bishops, and abbots to meet and discuss questions of taxation and government. At the same time there were called to meet them two men from each of certain towns and two from each county. This gave representation to the common people as well as to the nobles. In the course of time the lords, bishops, and abbots formed one body called the House of Lords; the representatives of the people formed another body called the House of Commons. Both bodies together formed the English Parliament, a word which comes from a French word meaning to speak.

In a somewhat similar way in the government of the United States the Senate forms an upper house, the Representatives form another house, and both together form our Congress, which represents the people and makes our national laws.

ENGLISH TERRITORY IN FRANCE IN TWELFTH CENTURY

We have seen that the king of England in the time of Henry the Second held a great stretch of territory in France. When Philip Augustus came to the throne of France, in 1180, he held directly under his control only a small area of land, two hundred miles in length. This was the Royal Domain, and included the cities of Paris and Orleans. Nearly all the remainder of France was under the control of the king of England, who recognized the king of France as his feudal overlord, but paid little attention to any other claim of the French king.

Philip started at once to regain control of the territory held by the English. By various means he stirred up strife in the royal family of England. At last the English, under King John, and the German emperor Otto the Fourth, attacked the French army at Bouvines, in France (1214), and fought one of the decisive battles of French history. It was a complete victory for Philip Augustus, who now ruled practically all the territory of France from the North Sea to the Pyrenees. The great cathedral of Paris, called Notre Dame de la Victoire, or Our Lady of Victory, was named in honor of this battle. It still stands as a beautiful example of Gothic architecture.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the trial by ordeal.
2. What is trial by jury?
3. What was the Magna Charta?
4. Name three important items in it.
5. When was the first Parliament of England?
6. Who was Simon de Montfort?
7. What was the effect of the battle of Bouvines?

CHAPTER LIV

IRELAND

Conversion of Ireland to Christianity

Ireland was settled very early, mainly by Celtic peoples, and was never subdued either by the Romans or by the German tribes. A Roman leader, Agricola, when conquering Britain about eighty years after the birth of Christ, saw Ireland at a distance, and wrote to the Roman emperor that it could be easily taken. He never tried, however, to conquer the island.

The early name of the island was Hibernia, and the people were called Scots. The inhabitants of northern Britain at that time were named the Picts. Centuries later the name of Scotland was given to the land that now bears it, and its people were called the Scots. The inhabitants of Hibernia, or Ireland, were from that time called Irish. Seven kings are believed to have ruled the land in the early days, the chief king having his home at Tara. He was called the ardri, which means high king. The kings were elected by the leaders of the island.

The people as a rule were pagans, their religion being that of the druids. They worshiped the sun as a god, and they believed that there were gods in the mountains, streams, and lakes. There had been from the earliest times more or less trade carried on between Rome, Spain, Gaul, and Ireland, and as early as the third century after Christ the Christian religion existed in Ireland.

The greatest apostle of Ireland was the famous Saint Patrick. At the age of sixteen he had been captured by raiders and carried as a slave to northwestern Ireland, where for six years he tended flocks on the hillsides. He succeeded in making his escape to England. Later, in France, he was ordained a priest. He longed, however, to return as a missionary to the country where he had been a slave. His wish was at last fulfilled and he was consecrated a bishop. He arrived in Ireland about the year 432. He traveled far and wide, especially in the northern part, and converted kings and people to the Christian faith.

ST. MATTHEW

An illustration from the "Book of Kells"

The druids feared that his arrival and his preaching would destroy their power, and they would have been glad to have him put to death. According to a story, on one great occasion the high king, with his nobles and the druids, was having a feast at the royal palace of Tara. According to the law no fire might be lighted at this time, under pain of death, until the new fire was lighted at Tara by the king.

While they were celebrating, they saw on the hill ten miles away a fire burning brightly. It had been lighted by Patrick. At once the king and his court drove to the spot to punish the bold offender. When they saw Patrick, they were ready to put him to death, had not a sudden earthquake thrown them into terror. The frightened horses bolted across the plain, and Patrick and his companions were saved.

Once in preaching, Patrick is said to have taken a shamrock from the grass at his feet, and to have explained by its single stem and triple leaf the mystery of the Trinity. For this reason the shamrock is a national emblem in Ireland.

Through Patrick's long labors Christianity was spread throughout Ireland. The Latin language was brought into the land, and Ireland secured the benefit of Roman culture and Roman literature.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Who were the early inhabitants of Ireland?
2. What was the religion of the island?
3. Tell the story of the druids and Saint Patrick.

CHAPTER LV

THE SCHOOLS AND MISSIONARIES OF IRELAND

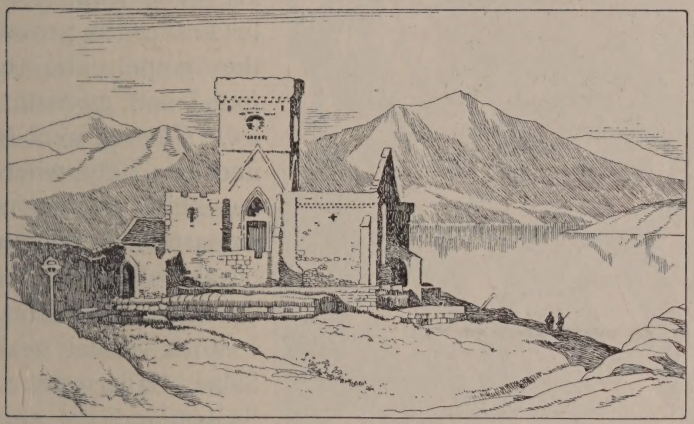
The Monastic Schools

The continent of Europe at this time and in the years following was overrun by Vandals, Franks, Lombards, Angles, Saxons, and Huns, who destroyed houses, churches, and schools. They swept away the live stock from the farms, and killed the unfortunate people wherever they met them.

In Ireland there was peace at this time; churches were built, and monasteries were erected. Among the leading monasteries were Bangor and Armagh in the north, Clonmacnoise in the middle of the island, on the Shannon River, and Lismore in the south. At the monastery of Kells was written and decorated with a pen by the monks the famous "Book of Kells," a manuscript of the Gospels. It is one of the most beautiful works ever written. It is still preserved in Dublin. The monks wrote on parchment, made from the skins of goats, sheep, or calves. The pen was a quill from a swan, goose, or crow. The ink was of many colors, and so durable that it has lasted in all its brilliancy for twelve hundred years, even to this day. At Clonfert lived Saint Brendan, who was believed to have made, in the earliest times, a visit to America. Because of their excellent teachers, and the lack of schools in Europe, the monastic schools of Ireland became centers of learning for Western Europe, and students flocked there from all quarters.

The Missionaries

From the monasteries of Ireland now came the men who were to aid in building up again the civilization of Great Britain and Europe. About a hundred years after the death of Saint Patrick, Saint Columba founded a famous monastery at Iona, a low rocky island off the west coast of Scotland. From this island missionaries went to



RUINS OF IONA

convert the natives of Scotland. From Iona also went Saint Aidan to convert the people of northern and central England, especially Northumbria. On the coast here, at Lindisfarne, he founded a famous monastery. In Northumbria was written the first work of English literature, for at Jarrow lived the great Benedictine scholar called the Venerable Bede. He has left us the earliest history of England now in existence. At Whitby was the first English poet Cædmon, who sang, says Bede, "of the creation of the world, the origin of man, and all the history of Genesis:

and made many verses on the departure of the children of Israel and their entering into the land of promise, with many other histories from Holy Writ." From York went the great Alcuin to teach in the schools of Charlemagne.

SAINT BONIFACE AND THE OAK OF THOR

Saint Columbanus was a monk at the monastery of Bangor. He went (A.D. 590) to France to preach the gospel and to found new monasteries. He even went to northern Italy, where he built a famous monastery at Bobbio, on the slopes of the Apennine Mountains.

With similar zeal, Saint Gall went to Switzerland to convert the hardy mountaineers. One of the cantons or states of Switzerland is named today in his honor. In both Bobbio and Saint Gall were famous libraries with the works of the leading authors of Rome and Greece. Irish monks went to the Faroe Islands, and were already in far distant Iceland when the Northmen arrived there and swept away the monasteries.

While the missionaries were going forth from Ireland to convert the peoples of Western Europe, a Benedictine

monk went from England to Germany. This monk was the famous Saint Boniface. For thirty-nine years he labored in the forests and towns, building churches and monasteries, and taming by his simple Christian teachings the wild tribes. He died at last a martyr's death. In his early missionary life he was shown an oak sacred to the German god Thor. It was the general belief that Thor would strike with his thunderbolt anyone who touched with impious hands his sacred tree. Boniface boldly cut it down, and built a chapel out of its timbers. When the natives saw that their god Thor was not able to protect his sacred tree, many of them became Christians.

BRIAN BORU AT CLONTARF

In the meantime Danish pirates swept along the coasts of England and reached Ireland, sailing again and again round the island in their plundering expeditions. They entered the land and sacked churches, houses, and monasteries, killing the monks far and wide. Many of the people fled to the forests and swamps to escape death. The land was ablaze with the burning buildings, and the

libraries and books on which the monks had spent so many years went up in flames. The Danes seized territory near the city of Dublin and in other places on good harbors where they settled. Year after year others came from Norway, Sweden, and Denmark to conquer the whole island. So numerous were they that an old history says there was not a headland from which a Danish fleet could not be seen.

Brian Boru at Clontarf

In 1014 war was declared against them by the monarch of Ireland, the famous Brian Boru. Brian was the type of the noble king. At his court of Kinkora the chiefs gathered for the feast and council, the judges or brehons to give the law, and the bards to sing the songs of the people. Brian gathered his armies, and at Clontarf (A.D. 1014) met the Danes and some Irish forces which had joined them. After an all-day battle, fought with great bravery on both sides, the Danes were defeated. Unfortunately for Ireland, Brian fell with his son in the hour of victory.

A period of great disorder arose, which continued for centuries.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the Book of Kells?
2. Describe the missionary activity of Iona.
3. For what was the Venerable Bede famous?
4. Who was Cædmon?
5. Tell the story of Saint Boniface in Germany.
6. Describe the battle of Clontarf.

CHAPTER LVI

THE RISE OF MONASTICISM

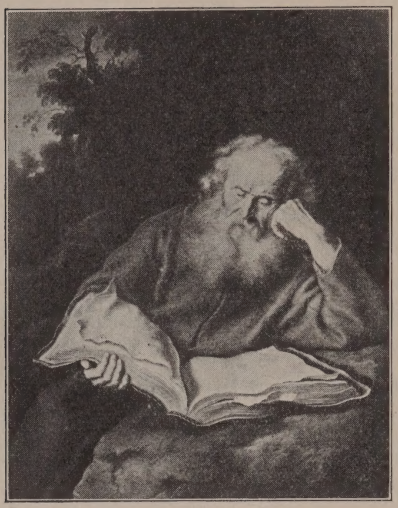
The Hermits

While some of the persecutions of the Christians were taking place, two hundred and fifty years after Christ, many pious persons withdrew for peace and safety to the hot and dreary deserts of Egypt and Syria, where they lived in lonely, desolate, and dreary cells or in caves of the dry and barren mountains, with no companions except wild beasts. They were called hermits. They devoted their time mainly to fasting and prayer. At times the fame of one man more devout than the others drew many to him, and a number of cells were built about the early single cell. Saint Anthony was one of the earliest to follow this form of living like Elijah and John the Baptist. In early days the prophets of Judea had worn sheepskins or goatskins. They wandered in deserts and mountains, and lived in caves and holes in the cliffs, eating locusts and wild honey.

Saint Anthony was born in Upper Egypt, of wealthy parents who died when he was twenty years of age. One day, in entering a church, he heard the words, "If thou wouldst be perfect, go and sell all thou hast, and give to the poor, and come and follow me." He gave his property to the people of his village, and went into the desert, where he lived for years, at times in caves, at times in tombs. About him gathered a large number of followers. Later, monasteries were founded under the direction of an abbot.

Spread of Monasticism

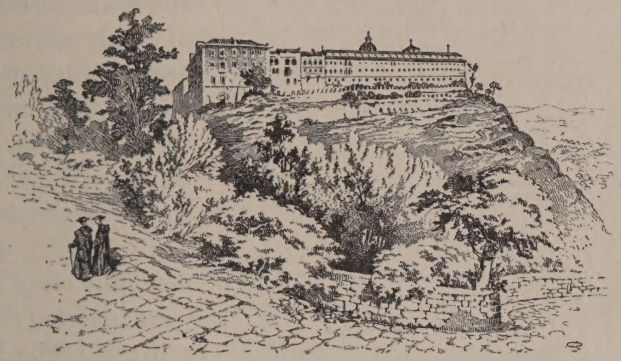
Among the early founders of monasticism was Saint Basil, who was born of wealthy parents. He was educated at the leading schools of Asia Minor and at the University of Athens. Going to Alexandria, in Egypt, he resolved to give up all his wealth and to live the life of a monk. In the mountains of Armenia, in central Asia Minor, he founded a community of monks which grew to large numbers, drawn there by the report of his sanctity and holy life. Once, when his enemies threatened to take his goods and torture him to death, he calmly replied, "My only property is a ragged cloak and a few books. My life on earth is merely a pilgrimage, and my body is so weak it will expire at the first torment. Death will be a relief." His enemies were so impressed with his words that they gave up their evil design.



A HERMIT

The monastic system spread from Egypt to Western Europe, and monasteries began to be built there. Saint Benedict, a native of Italy, erected (A.D. 529) a famous monastery at Monte Cassino, one hundred miles south of Rome. He built it on the ruins of a temple of Apollo.

He drew up a rule to guide his followers. His rule required prayer, seven hours of labor with the hands each day, and two hours of study. His followers were called Benedictines. They spread so rapidly that their monasteries in Britain, Germany, Scandinavia, France, and Spain were



MONTE CASSINO

numbered by thousands. Near the Benedictine monastery of Monte Cassino, Saint Scholastica, a sister of Saint Benedict, erected a convent which became famous.

Life in the Monastery; Books

The monks in large monasteries were under the rule of an abbot. They settled at times in waste places, drained the swamps, and cleared the forests. They then constructed large buildings in which their indoor work was carried on. The main building, with a church on one side, extended round a large, open court. Here were the rooms where the monks slept, the refectory where they ate, and the scriptorium where they copied books slowly by hand.

The monks wrote their books on parchment. This was usually made of sheepskin or calfskin, which was polished after the removal of the hair. The covers of these books were not cardboard covered with cloth, but wooden boards, held with heavy and beautiful clasps of gold, silver, or brass. Many of the missals were two or three feet long, and were placed on stands to be read. The letters were generally large, and were painted with a brush. The first letter in a paragraph was often colored, and sometimes a picture was painted on it.

A PAGE FROM AN ILLUMINATED MISSAL

These books are called illuminated missals. They may be seen today in many of the churches of Europe, and in some of our museums. The monks not only copied the books of ancient writers but wrote histories of the times in which they themselves lived. From these histories we now know the life, manners, and customs of those early days.

At the monastery of Jarrow, in England, a monk called the Venerable Bede wrote in Latin the history of the

English Church. It tells of the coming of Saint Augustine and of the conversion of many of the people of England. The history of early England, called the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, was written in English in the Benedictine monasteries. This was the first history of England ever written in English. It was the monks who throughout Europe saved to the world the great works of the early writers that would otherwise have perished.

In his lonely cell in Bethlehem Saint Jerome toiled for years translating the Bible into Latin. This Bible is called the Vulgate. It is used in the Catholic churches throughout the world to this day.

The Labors of the Monks

Some monks worked in laboratories to discover the secrets of chemistry. Others devoted themselves to music and painting. The abbeys and churches of the Benedictines are types of the great works of architecture of these early ages. Among the most famous of these abbeys were those at Cluny (in Burgundy) and Westminster (in England).

The monastery could supply practically all its own needs. Its gardens and orchards furnished vegetables and fruits. From its numerous beehives an ample supply of honey was secured. Its meadows produced hay. On its pastures were thousands of sheep and cattle. From the vineyards came grapes. There were tailors to make clothes, cobblers to make shoes, carpenters to construct and repair the buildings and to make furniture. There were masons to build walls and fences, and blacksmiths to repair the tools. Others dug peat from the bogs for fuel, or cut wood from neighboring forests. Everybody worked with a will

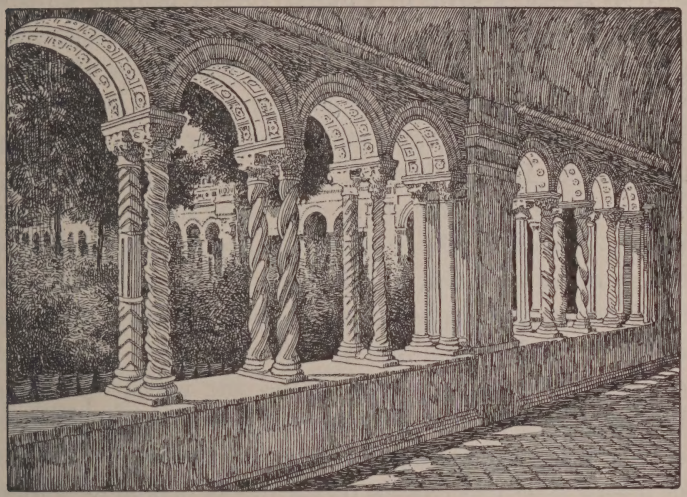
and the monastery resembled a beehive in its active life. To shelter the large number of members, many buildings were needed. One monastery in Switzerland had no less than thirty buildings within its outer walls.

The monasteries furnished food for the poor, who came every day to the gate to receive it. They served as hotels

LIFE IN A MONASTERY

for travelers, for few hotels or inns existed along the great highways of Europe. They cared for the sick, as there were not many hospitals at that time. The school of the monastery gave instruction to the children of the people who lived about it. The monks taught the peasants agriculture, and introduced many new trees, plants, and seeds. They also showed how swamp and forest land could be changed into fertile fields.

The monks had such a widespread reputation for kindness that even the barbarian invaders, except the Northmen, seldom attacked and destroyed them. Later they were able to hold somewhat in check the nobles who would rob and oppress the peasantry. They helped many poor boys to rise to positions of the greatest dignity and power, thereby teaching valuable lessons in democracy to all.



A MONASTERY CLOISTER

Through gifts some of the monasteries became very wealthy, and many other smaller monasteries were subject to them. It is said the famous abbey of Cluny in eastern France had at one time two thousand monasteries subject to it or affiliated with it. The abbots of the great monasteries became feudal lords, ruling large territories with thousands of tenants. They sat in the parliaments of their countries.

From the monasteries went forth missionaries to convert the pagan barbarians to the Christian religion and to spread civilization far and wide in Western Europe.

Saint Francis of Assisi; Saint Dominic

Seven centuries after Saint Benedict, there arose in Italy the famous Franciscan order. Saint Francis was born in Assisi, a town of Umbria. After leading a life of gayety and pleasure, he turned to prayer, poverty, and good deeds. He read and followed the words of Christ, which told him not to have gold or silver or brass in his purse, neither two coats, nor shoes, nor staff, but to go and preach. He clad himself in a coarse garment of serge, with a rope around his waist, and went forth with a companion, preaching the truths of the gospel to the lowly and showing kindness to all living things, even the poor dumb beasts and the birds and the fishes. He often called the birds his brothers and sisters, and spoke kind words to them. According to the legend the fishes came near the shore to listen to his words, and the birds gathered to hear him. An interesting story is told of a wolf that for a long time had caused terror to the people of Agobio. Saint Francis went out to meet him. When the fierce beast leaped at him, he made the sign of the cross, and spoke kindly to him. The wolf at once crouched at the feet of Saint Francis, and for two years, as long as he lived, the animal followed him like a pet dog.

Once Saint Francis met a young man who was carrying doves to be sold in the market place of a neighboring town. Saint Francis begged him to give them to him, and carefully placing them in his habit he brought them home, where they ate from his hand.

Saint Francis visited the sick and those in prison. He slept wherever he could find shelter, and he ate food as it was given to him. Attracted by his wonderful kindness, power, and sanctity, many were led to follow him. On their missions the Franciscans traveled generally in pairs, and started without money or food. They depended on the charity of those whom they visited. The Franciscans became in a short time a great order that spread to all parts of the world.

About the same time Saint Dominic, of Spain, founded his order, known as the Dominicans. This order was planned especially to teach and to preach.

The Benedictine, Franciscan, and Dominican orders had a wonderful effect on the religious history of the world during the following centuries.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the life of a hermit.
2. Where did Saint Benedict found his famous monastery?
3. What benefits did the monasteries confer on the people?
4. Who was Saint Francis?
5. Tell the story of the wolf of Agobio.

CHAPTER LVII

THE MOHAMMEDANS

Mohammed, the Prophet

Although the Romans had conquered practically all the lands about the Mediterranean Sea, there was one country that had not been conquered either by the Romans or earlier by the Assyrians, Babylonians, or Persians. This was Arabia, the great sandy desert land that lies between the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea. The people here lived as independent tribes. They raised flocks and herds, and moved about from place to place. They had therefore few towns. They raised beautiful horses, and were skilled riders. Their holy city was Mecca, where they worshiped idols, especially a sacred black stone which had been given, they believed, by an angel to Abraham. This stone was probably a meteor.

The devout people came to Mecca every year on great pilgrimages. Wars were forbidden for four months among the Arabs, that all might visit Mecca in safety. At this time caravans could travel across the deserts of Arabia without guards to protect them. There were in Arabia a few Jews and Christians also.

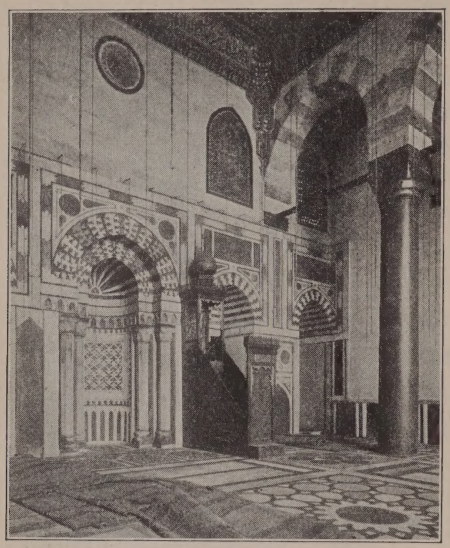
About five hundred and seventy years after Christ, Mohammed was born, in Mecca. His father, who was very poor, died when Mohammed was a small boy, and the boy was adopted by his uncle. While Mohammed was still very young, he took care of his uncle's camels

and sheep, and after a time had charge of caravans to the Red Sea. On these travels he had heard of the Jews and the rise of Christianity, and he turned from the worship of idols, which his people believed in at that time. At the age of twenty-five he married a rich widow, which made it possible for him to build up a business for himself. Mohammed was of a religious nature, and every year he retired to a lonely cave not far from Mecca. He believed he heard voices from heaven, and he declared he saw in a vision the angel Gabriel. Mohammed himself could neither read nor write, but he remembered all that he saw and heard in his visions. His sayings were copied by his friends—on leaves of palms, on the shoulder blades of sheep, or on pieces of pottery. Later these sayings were gathered together. They formed the Koran, the sacred book of the Mohammedans. In this way a new religion arose, the chief idea being contained in the words "There is no God but Allah, and Mohammed is his prophet." Mohammed's wife was the first convert to his religion, which, however, grew very slowly.

A PAGE OF THE KORAN

The Hejira

For thirteen years Mohammed preached in the market place of Mecca, with little success. He at last boldly destroyed many of the idols there. The people of Mecca in anger drove him out as an impostor, for his teachings, if successful, would interfere with the large trade of the pilgrims who came to worship the sacred stone. In fear of his life Mohammed fled to Medina, a city about two hundred miles north of Mecca. This departure of Mohammed from Mecca is named the hejira, which is Arabic for flight. It took place in the year 622 of our era, which became a historic date with Mohammed's followers, being reckoned since that time the first year of their calendar.



A MOHAMMEDAN MOSQUE

Mohammed was more successful at Medina. He gathered a large number of followers, who built a great church, or mosque. His religion was named Islam, meaning reconciliation or surrender to Allah, or God, and belief in Mohammed as the prophet of God. This was the only way, it taught, by which it was possible to reach paradise. This paradise was a beautiful land of flowers, trees, and

fruits, where for eternity the faithful would be waited on by young maidens of wonderful beauty.

Mohammed now took a most decided step. Instead of merely preaching his doctrines, he began to arouse his followers by dreams of conquest with the sword. "Kill all who refuse to join our standard," was his order. He was so successful in his appeal that he dared to attack the rich caravans in the sacred months, when, according to the Arab custom, the caravans were unprotected by armed guards. With the wealth he secured from these caravans he built up his army.

The Meccans, to avenge this insult to their religion in attacking the caravans in the sacred months, gathered armed forces and met the followers of Mohammed at the battle of Badr, but were defeated. They gladly made peace with Mohammed, for they wished to save their city. Mohammed returned to Mecca in 630, just eight years after he had been driven out. Two years later he died, but his religion was now established, and soon his forces overran all Arabia. The people became Mohammedans, and this religion spread far and wide, in Turkey, Persia, Africa, India, and even to the distant Malay states of the East.

Under the Caliphs, or successors of Mohammed, the Arabs attacked and defeated the Persians. They defeated Heraclius also, the emperor of Constantinople. They captured Egypt, northern Africa, Syria, and Palestine. Jerusalem soon fell into their hands. They built mosques in the cities which they won, and from the towers of the mosques the muezzins, or Mohammedan priests, five times a day called all the faithful to turn their faces to the holy city of Mecca and pray.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Give a brief account of the life of Mohammed.

2. What was the hejira?

3. Find, on the map, Arabia, Mecca, Medina, the Red Sea.

4. It is said that Mohammed could neither read nor write. How was the Koran, the sacred book of the Mohammedans, got together?

5. The Romans dated their year from 753 B.C., and the Mohammedans from 622 of the Christian Era. What would our present year be according to the Roman and what according to the Mohammedan calendar?

CHAPTER LVIII

MOHAMMEDAN CULTURE

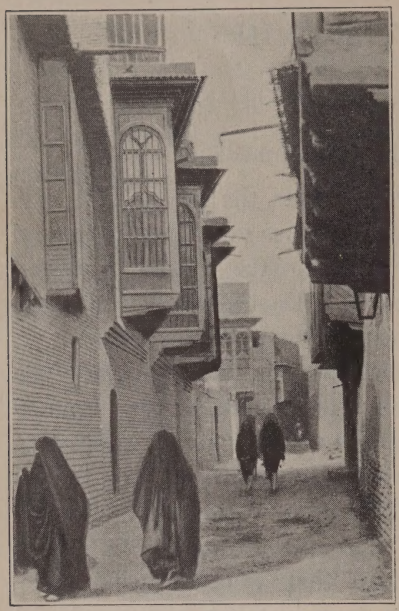
The Arts and Sciences of the Mohammedans

Mohammed died ten years after the hejira. He was buried in Medina, where his tomb has ever since been held sacred by his followers. His birthplace, Mecca, is visited by every pious Mohammedan at least once in a lifetime, if it is possible to make the pilgrimage there.

In a few years the Mohammedans had captured Asia Minor, Syria, and Palestine. In Jerusalem they erected a mosque. The Mohammedans wrote many interesting books, one of which is the Arabian Nights, so well known to the children of today. They conquered Persia, and carried their banners as far as India. Damascus became a Mohammedan capital. Here they manufactured silks, tapestries, rich dress goods, tent curtains, and wonderful blades for swords and knives. Afterwards Bagdad, on the Tigris River, was built up and took the place of Damascus as the capital. For three hundred years it was the richest and most wonderful city of the world.

Wherever they went, the Mohammedans planted vineyards and orchards, and laid out vast canals to carry water to them. They were highly skilled in agriculture. They knew the value of constantly changing the crops, and they worked with great success to produce new types of fruits and flowers. They brought into use the sugar-cane, rice, hemp, oranges, lemons, asparagus, and apricots.

They were skilled in the arts also. They made weapons of the finest steel, coats of mail, and all kinds of goods, of gold, bronze, copper, iron, steel, and silver. They made paper, glass, pottery, dyes, perfumes, syrups, fine grades of leather, beautiful lamps, tapestry, and furniture.



© Underwood & Underwood

A STREET IN BAGDAD

To their schools and universities the Mohammedans brought great teachers of grammar, chemistry, mathematics, astronomy, and medicine. We have derived many words in our language like "algebra," "alcohol," "alkali," and "alchemy" from the Arabs. They brought from India the so-called Arabic system of counting, which used the cipher for the first time. This is the system which we commonly use today.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What is the sacred city of the Mohammedans?
2. Tell something about Bagdad and Damascus.
3. What did the Mohammedans do for education?
4. What important addition to mathematics did they make?

CHAPTER LIX

THE SPREAD OF THE MOHAMMEDAN POWER

The Mohammedans push Westward

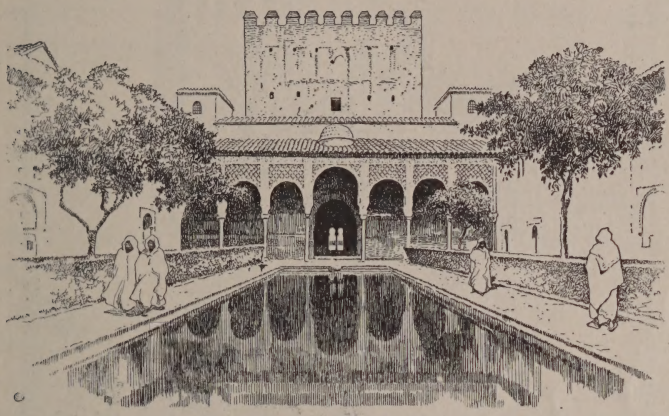
In a few years the Mohammedans conquered Egypt and swept along the northern coast of Africa, to the Strait of Gibraltar. They converted the savage Berber tribes. As a result, all northern Africa spoke the Arabic language. Across the Strait of Gibraltar lay sunny Spain. At that time Spain was under the control of a Teutonic nation called the Visigoths, or West Goths. According to the story a Spaniard, having been wronged by Roderick, king of the Visigoths, crossed to Africa and told the Mohammedans, or Moors, as they were frequently called, of the beauty and wealth of Spain. He declared it could be easily conquered.

The Moors listened eagerly and at once set their armies in motion. They crossed the Strait (A.D. 711), and defeated and killed Roderick. The Moorish armies now swept up the Spanish peninsula, and soon all Spain except a small corner in the northwest was in their hands. Cordova became the seat of their power in the West. They erected beautiful palaces and mosques, which remain to this day. The Madison Square tower in New York City is modeled after the Moorish tower of Seville. The great mosque of Cordova can still be visited, and one can see today on the hills above Granada, in southern Spain, the wonderful palace of the Alhambra.

THE MOHAMMEDAN CONQUESTS AT THEIR GREATEST EXTENT, ABOUT THE YEAR 750

The Battle of Tours

The Mohammedans were not yet satisfied. They climbed the Pyrenees Mountains, and saw below them the fair fields of France. Soon the Moorish armies were on their way across the mountains, pouring into France. It was a critical moment in the world's history. The Moorish armies swept up the valley of the Rhone. At Tours, in



A COURT IN THE ALHAMBRA

central France, the Moorish armies met (A.D. 732) the armies of the Franks and Burgundians under Charles Martel (or Charles the Hammer, as his name means), one hundred years after the death of Mohammed. Throughout the day the Moorish horsemen charged in vain against the solid battle line of the Franks. The Moors were defeated, and Europe was saved from their rule. The Moorish army retreated to Spain, where they continued to hold most of the peninsula for seven hundred years. While they lived in Spain, they built many cities with beautiful suburbs of orchards and vineyards. They worked out a

THE GIRALDA OF SEVILLE

From an etching by E. D. Roth

beautiful type of building called the Moorish, or Arabesque, a type largely of lines and curves. Arab scholars opened many schools and colleges, especially in Egypt and Spain, and built famous mosques like those at Cordova and Seville, which may be seen today. Year by year, however, the armies of the Spaniards grew stronger, and the Moors were forced to retreat to the south. In the year 1492 Ferdinand and Isabella drove the Moors entirely from the peninsula.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the Mohammedan conquest of northern Africa.

2. What happened to the Visiogothic monarchy of Spain?

3. Why is the battle of Tours one of the decisive battles of the world?

4. What peculiar type of architecture did the Moors introduce?

5. For many years the Moors of Spain made from cotton pulp most of the world's paper. From what are newspapers made today?

6. In what part of the world do most Mohammedans live today?

CHAPTER LX

THE CRUSADES

The Holy Land and the Turks

We have already seen that the Mohammedans in the seventh century conquered Palestine and the city of Jerusalem. Many devout persons at that time wished to make a journey or pilgrimage to the Holy Land, and many attempted it.

Frequently with only the usual clothing, a staff, and a little money a pilgrim started on his long journey across the Alps and down the valley of the Danube to Constantinople. Here he crossed the Bosporus, and journeyed through Asia Minor and Syria. He was beset by the dangers of heat and cold, wretched roads, lack of provisions, frequent attack of robbers and bandits, and the burning sands of Asia Minor. Could he escape all these dangers, he at last saw before him the towers of Jerusalem.

For centuries the Saracens, as the Mohammedans of Syria and Palestine were commonly called by the Christians, allowed the Christians to visit Jerusalem. The Saracens had a great respect for the Holy Land, and at some points built rest houses to be used by the pilgrims.

After a time, however, a great change came. In 1070 appeared the Seljukian Turks. They were so called from an early able leader named Seljuk. These Turks came from central and eastern Asia, and were related to the savage Huns. They had been converted to Mohammedan-

ism. They defeated the Arabs, and sweeping all before them conquered Persia, Syria, and Palestine. They pressed on to the Bosporus, and were encamped ready to attack Constantinople. They began at once to illtreat the Christians in the lands which they won. They destroyed Christian churches, imprisoned and starved Christian prisoners, and put many to death. When they conquered Palestine, Jerusalem fell into their hands. They did all in their power to prevent Christian pilgrims from visiting the Holy Land.

Throughout Western Europe a cry of anger arose at the actions and cruelties of the Turks, and the people demanded that the holy places should be taken from them. At the same time the Eastern emperor sent an urgent appeal to the Pope and to the leading rulers of Europe for aid to prevent the Turks from crossing the Bosporus and capturing Constantinople.

The Beginning of the Crusades

In 1095 Pope Urban the Second called a council of the church, at Clermont, in France. At this council he was present, and since he was a native of France, he spoke to the people in the French tongue. With burning words he described the suffering of the Christians in the Holy Land. He called on the peoples and rulers to settle their quarrels and to help in the work of redeeming the sacred places from the hands of the infidel Turk. Moved by his words, the people raised a great shout. "It is the will of God," they cried.

A crusade was declared; that is, a holy war or armed pilgrimage against the Turks for the recovery of the Holy Sepulcher. The word "crusade" is derived from the Latin

word for cross; each soldier who enlisted wore a cross, made of cloth, on the breast of his coat when going to the East, and wore it on his back when he was returning.

PREACHING TO THE CRUSADERS

A monk named Peter the Hermit aroused the people far and wide to the need of taking up arms to save the holy places. From the different nations of Europe, but especially from France and southern Italy, men came to

join the standard of the cross. This is probably the only time in history when all Western Europe was under one banner. So many came from France that the Saracens for centuries called the Western Christians Franks, no matter where they came from. Knights put on their armor, and princes hurried to lead the gathering warriors.

Among the most prominent rulers were Godfrey of Bouillon, who was duke of Lower Lorraine, Bohemund of Sicily, and Robert, eldest son of William the Conqueror. Each crusader received special favors from his king, and the church gave many special blessings and privileges. So great was the excitement that women and children joined the ranks to go to Asia. Under Peter the Hermit and Walter the Penniless an untrained body of more than fifteen thousand persons started for the East. They were destroyed by disease and the Turks even before they had entered far into Asia Minor.

In August, 1096, three hundred thousand men, in four divisions, were in arms and on the march to the East. Some, however, went by boat, sailing from the Italian cities of Venice and Genoa. There was no one military man in charge of the whole movement. Each division was under its own lord or ruler, and at its own cost. Poorly equipped as the armies were for so long and so difficult an expedition, there was of course great suffering, and tens of thousands quickly died. One half of those in the armies perished on the march from attacks by the enemy or from disease, hunger, and thirst.

After leaving Constantinople the armies invaded Asia Minor, and captured Nicæa and Antioch, but with dreadful suffering and loss of men. Here a large Turkish army besieged them for a year, when, desperate through lack

of food, they suddenly burst forth from the city and, in the panic that followed, routed the Turks.

The Fall of Jerusalem

Almost three years passed after the armies had set out from home before they came to Jerusalem, and only twenty thousand of the vast number now remained. When they saw the city, from the Mount of Olives, they gave a

CRUSADERS AT THE HOLY SEPULCHER

great shout, and fell on their knees. They found, however, that the city was well defended, and they made attack after attack on its walls in vain. Godfrey of Bouillon ordered timber to be brought, and erected three towers which rose above the walls.

When these towers were moved forward, the Turks fought with desperate valor. They poured hot oil and stones on the heads of the crusaders, and with bow and sword fought every inch of ground. From one tower, now moved against the wall, Godfrey and his men at last, after eight days of constant fighting, gained the top of the wall and drove back its defenders. The gates were opened,

and Jerusalem fell, A.D. 1099. The inhabitants were put to death with fearful cruelty. Godfrey of Bouillon was placed in charge of the city with the title of Protector of the Holy Sepulcher. The crusaders established the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem, but Godfrey refused the title of king, declaring he would not wear a crown of gold in the very city where Christ had worn only a crown of thorns.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Describe the rise of the Turks.
2. Explain the meaning of the word "crusade."
3. What was the cause of the crusades?
4. In what year was the First Crusade?
5. When was Jerusalem captured?

CHAPTER LXI

THE RESULTS OF THE CRUSADES

Saladin

Eighty-eight years later Jerusalem was retaken by the Saracens under Saladin, one of the greatest leaders the Saracens ever knew. To recapture it, three armies were sent, one under the Emperor Frederick Barbarossa (or Red Beard), of Germany, another under Philip Augustus, king of France, and a third under Richard the First, king of England. Richard was called the Lion-hearted because of his great bravery.

Barbarossa was drowned in Asia, in trying to cross a river, and his army was cut to pieces by the Turks. The German poets have pictured Barbarossa as still sleeping in one of the mountains of Germany. His red beard reaches to his feet, and his arm, resting on a marble table, supports his crowned head. Once every hundred years he awakes and sends a dwarf, who always sits beside him, out of the mountain cavern to see if the ravens, which are birds of evil omen, are still flying about the mountain. The dwarf reports that they are, and Barbarossa goes to sleep again.

Richard the Lion-hearted found Saladin a generous foe. Hearing that Richard was ill, Saladin sent him fresh fruit and other delicacies which Richard would not have been able otherwise to obtain. When at one time Richard's horse was shot under him in battle, Saladin sent him

a noble Arab steed. Richard finally was glad to make peace with so noble an opponent as Saladin.

On his return from the East, Richard was taken prisoner by the emperor in Germany. It was not known where he was in prison. According to a story, a friend of Richard's went through Germany singing a favorite song of his king beneath every castle he came to. At one place he heard Richard's voice singing the second verse of the song. A large sum of money was paid to the emperor, and at last Richard was able to return to England.

BARBAROSSA

Effect of the Crusades

In all, there were seven crusades sent against the Turks. In these crusades millions of lives were lost, as well as millions of dollars' worth of property. In the end the Mohammedans still held the Holy Land, and it remained in their hands for more than seven hundred years. In 1918, in the World War, it was captured by the English.

In spite of the great losses, sufferings, and cruelties of the crusades a certain amount of good came from them.

Europe was saved from the danger of a Turkish conquest, since the Turks had to stay in the East to defend their territory. Again, the crusaders saw the wonderful treasures and splendid buildings of the Orient, and they longed to have things as beautiful in their own countries. As a result, commerce began to be actively carried on between the East and the West, and the Italian cities of Venice,

AMALFI

Genoa, Pisa, and Amalfi became the leading ports in Western Europe, and secured great wealth. Banks were founded, and money was coined to take the place of barter, which was merely the exchange of one class of goods directly for another. Many of the nobles who ruled the cities and towns of Europe had gone on the crusades and were killed. The people of these cities and towns were able, therefore, to demand and obtain from the king greater freedom than they had ever had before.

In their voyage to the coasts of Asia Minor, the seamen

of the West learned from Eastern sailors how to handle vessels with safety. As a result, the Mediterranean was dotted with Italian ships, carrying valuable cargoes to Europe. Western peoples began to imitate the beautiful goods of the East, and manufacturing was begun in most Western countries. The crusaders brought seeds and plants from the East, and the orange, the lemon, the apricot, and hundreds of other valuable fruits and plants began to be grown in Europe. Windmills, which had been seen in large numbers in the East, were now tried in the West, and were successful, especially in Holland. The people of that swampy country built dikes, and let the windmills pump out the water from the lands. These lands became flourishing fields, where cattle grazed, and where neat cottages were to be seen on every hand.

In the East the crusaders had met travelers from many countries of the Orient, and they brought back with them tales of the great wealth of India, the Spice Islands, and Cathay, as China was called. This caused a burning desire to see these new lands, and was one of the causes of the great exploring zeal of the Portuguese and the Spaniards, which finally brought about the great voyages of the fifteenth century.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Tell the story of Barbarossa.

2. Who was Saladin?

3. What happened to Richard the Lion-hearted in Germany?

4. Give some of the results of the crusades.

5. The crusaders brought to Europe pitchers of glazed pottery. Of what are the pitchers in your home made?

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

A.D. 469 : Death of Saint Patrick.
A.D. 570 : Birth of Mohammed.
A.D. 597 : Saint Augustine reaches England.
A.D. 711 : Moors conquer Spain.
A.D. 732 : Moors defeated at Tours by Charles Martel.
A.D. 751 : Pippin, King of the Franks.
A.D. 768–814 : Era of Charlemagne.
A.D. 800–1100 : The Vikings.
A.D. 901 : Death of Alfred the Great.
A.D. 911 : Rollo secures Normandy.
A.D. 1014 : Battle of Clontarf.
A.D. 1066 : William of Normandy conquers England.
A.D. 1095 : Council of Clermont. First Crusade.
A.D. 1099 : Crusaders conquer Jerusalem.
A.D. 1171 : Henry II of England invades Ireland.
A.D. 1182–1226 : Saint Francis.
A.D. 1215 : Magna Charta.
A.D. 1265 : Beginning of the Parliament of England.

CHAPTER LXII

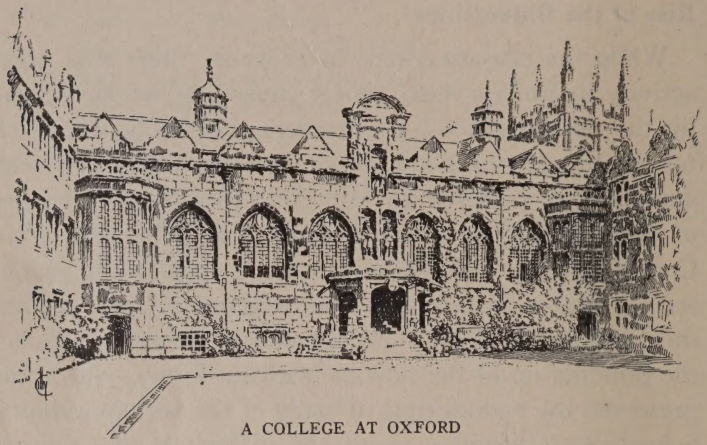
THE RISE OF THE UNIVERSITIES; THE HANSEATIC LEAGUE

Rise of the Universities

While the crusades were in progress, there was great activity in Europe itself, partly caused, as we have seen, by the new ideas of the crusaders. Not only were rich fabrics brought back to Europe, but the works of Greek authors were gathered up with great care for the libraries of Europe. Greek teachers came also, especially from Constantinople, and scholars studied eagerly the manuscripts of the famous old Greek authors. Pope Nicholas the Fifth secured five thousand ancient works, and began the building up of the famous Vatican library, which has preserved the manuscripts of many of the ancient authors. Schools were founded about the cathedrals and monasteries, and many of the famous universities of Europe arose. At Bologna, in Italy, a great medical school was founded; at Paris, a university, which was the center of learning on the continent of Europe. Universities were also founded at Oxford and Cambridge in England, at Cordova, Seville, and Toledo in Spain, at Orleans and Montpellier in France, and in many other parts of Europe. Many of these universities were founded by bishops or by religious orders. In these were famous teachers. Among the Dominicans were Saint Thomas Aquinas and Albertus Magnus; among the Franciscans were Saint Bonaventure,

Duns Scotus, and Roger Bacon. Bacon was a professor at Oxford; like Albertus, he was one of the most brilliant and famous scientists of his age.

Latin was the language in general use in the universities, not only among the teachers, but among the students. The students' notes of the lectures were written in Latin. The use of this universal language allowed students to



A COLLEGE AT OXFORD

come from any country in Europe and take up their studies without having to learn the language of the country in which the university was situated.

In most of the schools the students listened to the lectures in bare, cold rooms, for no beautiful and extensive buildings, such as we see today in our universities, had been erected for them. They often sat on the floor, which was covered with straw. Teachers moved at times from one university to another, and pupils by thousands followed their favorite teachers wherever they went. Students were under special laws, which at times differed

from those of the town in which they were studying. They were tried for any wrongdoing by the authorities of the university, and not by those of the town. They were given special rights, also, as they moved from place to place. At times students would beg their way from their homes to the universities, and as a rule they were treated with great kindness and were aided on their journey. At the opening

A SHIP OF THE HANSEATIC LEAGUE

of the fourteenth century there were, in various parts of Western Europe, probably not less than fifty universities.

Growth of the Towns and Cities

Up to this time there had been, north of the Alps, few large cities or towns. There now sprang up important cities along the highways of trade. Paris, London, Bristol, Cologne, Lyon, and Ghent were a few that began to grow and thrive, and a great trade was opened up with the East. The goods of Eastern lands were brought from the countries about the Black Sea, and from Asia Minor and

Egypt. Some of these goods were sent up the valley of the Danube, and thence to the Rhine. Others were shipped by sea to the cities of Italy. From Italy they were carried up the valley of the Rhone, or over the passes of the Alps, to the markets and fairs of northern Europe, especially to the cities and towns of the Hanseatic League.

THE HANSA TOWNS

This league was made up of almost a hundred towns and cities. The German word *Hansa* means fellowship or association. The league began in Germany, with the union of Hamburg and Lübeck. It soon spread to other German towns, and then to Holland, England, Sweden, and Russia. Its capital was Lübeck, and the leading cities were Bruges in Belgium, London in England, Bergen in Sweden, and Novgorod in Russia. The Hanseatic League was very powerful. Its stations were governed according to its own laws; even in foreign cities like London, where

a part of the city was given to it, it ruled itself regardless of the laws of the nation in which it was established. The league coined money, suppressed piracy, and made peace or war. Its ships did the greater part of the carrying trade of northern Europe.

Life in the Towns

The medieval town was confined within its walls, which shut out a great deal of light and air. As the town grew, the houses increased in number, and became even more cramped and uncomfortable.

The streets were narrow, crooked, and dark, as the houses with overhanging upper stories came very close together. There was no regular system of street lighting, although here and there a lantern was hung from a bracket by the owner of a house.

There were few paved streets and no sidewalks. After a rain the mud made traveling disagreeable. There were, as a rule, no sewers and no water systems. Wells supplied the people with water.

Many of the houses were of stone, with upper stories of timber, beautifully carved. Often a statue or a sundial was built into the corner or into the side of a house. Here and there a tower stood over the street, and beneath was an arch for the roadway. The medieval town was often extremely picturesque.

The principal streets led into the market place, on one side of which was the great church, built by the willing hands of the townspeople themselves. Many of these churches stand today as marvels of art, and are a wonderful exhibition of the skill of the workers of the Middle Ages, who with their own hands erected them.

Shops of all kinds surrounded the square. To the market place the neighboring farmers brought their butter, cheese, eggs, poultry, and vegetables. Often at the gate of the city the farmer and all others bringing in goods had to pay a tax, levied by the town, as is still done in many European cities, which in this way secured a large revenue.

A MEDIEVAL TOWN

With the exception of the market place there were few public parks or recreation grounds in these medieval cities.

A bell ringer called the people together to tell them of some new rule or law, or to make some important announcement. There were all sorts of laws; for instance, there were laws which told the people when to put out their fires and go to bed, and what to wear.

The Guilds

The industries of the town were carried on by guilds, which were made up of workers joined in organizations somewhat similar to our modern trade or labor unions. There were guilds of the cobblers, bakers, goldsmiths, tailors, weavers, and carpenters, and of those employed in other trades. Every worker had to join a guild, or he was not allowed to work. Manufacturers also had a guild, as did the sellers of goods and keepers of stores.

© Publishers' Photo Service, Inc.

TOWN HALL, BRUSSELS

Each guild had its own patron saint and celebrated the feast of the saint with religious services and processions. The rate of wages, the hours of labor, the examination of the finished goods, the place of sale, the price to be asked for articles, all were in the hands of the guild. To make the conduct of affairs easier, all the members of a guild generally resided and had their shops in the same part of the town.

To join a guild, a boy became an apprentice. For seven years he worked to learn the trade, and was given board, lodging, and clothing by the master workman. He was

also allowed to attend school, for a school existed in every town of medieval Europe. At the end of his term the apprentice was examined by the guild. If he passed a satisfactory test, he became a journeyman. Later, when he had gathered together a little money, he set up his own little shop and now became a master workman.

A MEDIEVAL FAIR

The guild gave its members protection at a time when there were few courts, or when the courts were incapable of giving justice. The guilds frequently built beautiful halls, where the members met. The guilds took care of their needy members, as well as the widows and orphans.

The medieval town was a little world in itself, where everyone knew his neighbor, and where he could obtain practically everything he needed. For this reason loyalty to the town rather than to the feudal lord took first place in the mind and heart of the citizen.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What language was in general use among scholars at this time?

2. Give some ideas on the life of scholars in these ages.

3. What was the Hanseatic League?

4. Show how the towns and cities differed from ours.

5. Is Latin taught in the schools of your town or city today?

6. Wells were in general use in medieval times. Find out where the water of your home comes from.

7. Is it allowable now to build over the sidewalk or street? Has your city any law about the height of buildings?

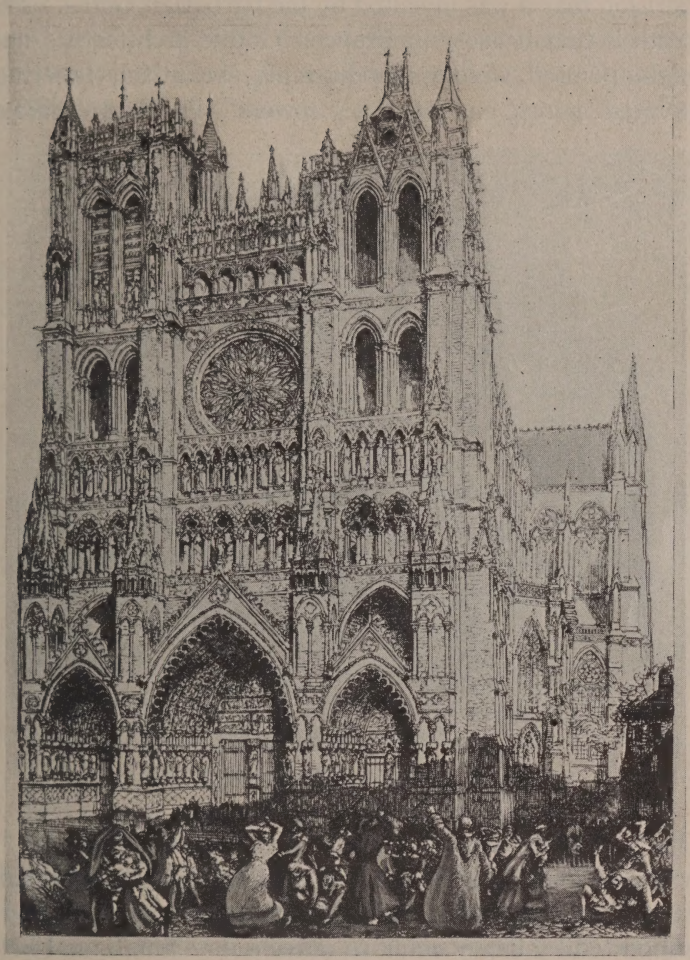
CHAPTER LXIII

THE GOTHIC ARCHITECTURE; MIRACLE PLAYS

Architecture; Romanesque and Gothic

During these ages there arose new types of architecture. One was called the Romanesque, because it resembled the old Roman basilicas, or courts of justice. The word "basilica" is Greek, and means the house of the king. The Roman basilica was oblong. Later the Christians changed it into the form of a Latin cross. In England this architecture was called Norman. Heavy walls and towers, and rounded arches in doors and windows, were features of this type of architecture. A Romanesque church had a main aisle, or nave, and two side aisles which were separated from the nave by heavy round columns. At the far end was a rounded recess called an apse. The Normans built their churches longer than those in early Romanesque, and extended the arms of the cross much farther. Since the walls and columns had to support the heavy round-arched roof, they were built thick and strong. The windows were small and narrow, that the walls might not be weakened by large openings. The doorways were deep and beautifully carved. The interior of Romanesque churches was dark and cool, but nevertheless well adapted to the climate of Europe.

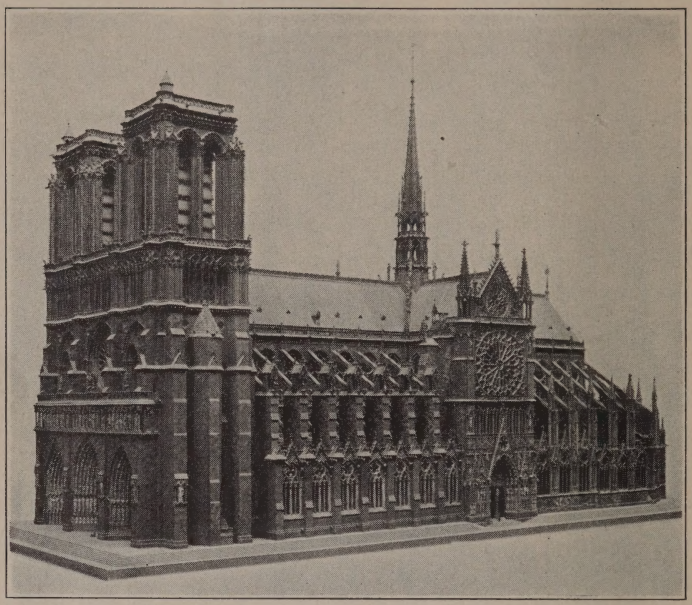
Another type of architecture was the Gothic. The name has in reality nothing to do with the Goths, but was given by Italian architects who did not like it, and who said in



AMIENS CATHEDRAL

From an etching by Le Père

derision that it was invented by the barbarian Goths. The truth is that it arose in France. Gothic architecture had high, pointed windows and arches, beautiful, tapering, pointed spires, and at times towers. The high ceilings

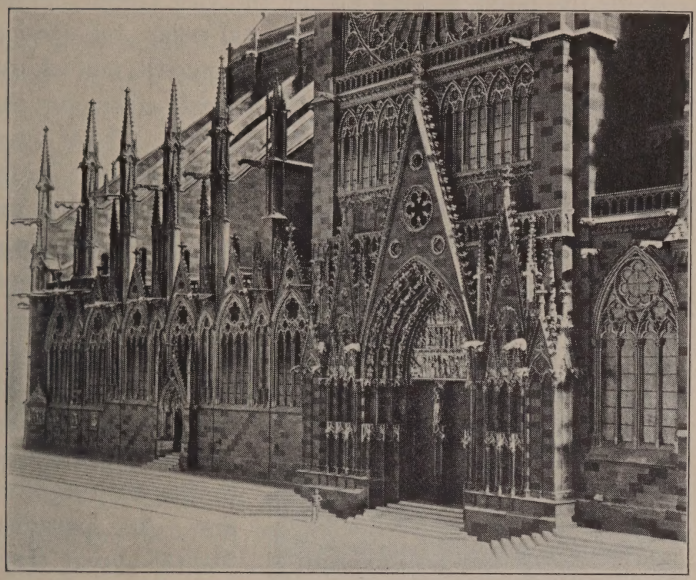


A GOTHIC CHURCH, NOTRE DAME OF PARIS

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

were supported by stone ribs, and the walls were made strong by supports, called flying buttresses. These were supported by heavy columns outside the church, and held the walls so firmly at the points where the pressure of the ribbed ceiling was greatest that numbers of large windows could be used without weakening the walls. The plan admitted air and a large amount of light, which was

much needed in northern countries. To soften the light and to add beauty to the interior, the windows were filled with stained glass, showing scenes from the Bible and from the life of Christ and the saints. No later age has



FLYING BUTTRESSES

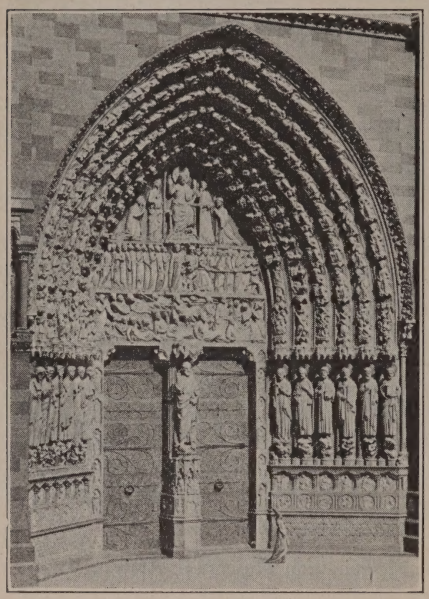
Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

been able to make glass of such delicate shades of color as the stained glass in these early Gothic cathedrals. Hundreds of delicately carved statues lined the entrance and the outer and inner walls of these cathedrals, and frequently peculiar figures called gargoyles formed the water spouts or decorated the towers and columns. Throughout Europe these Gothic churches show the wonderful art of that era; we can study it today in the Gothic cathe-

drals of Chartres, Amiens, Paris, Cologne, Toledo, Salisbury, Lincoln, Milan, and many other places.

Dante; Miracle Plays

While the builders were raising the vast Gothic cathedrals, Dante was writing his immortal poem, the Divine Comedy, one of the great epics of the world. This was written, not in Latin, as was usually the case in all the great books of these ages, but in Italian. In his poem Dante tells of his fabled descent to hell and of what he saw there, and of a visit to purgatory and to paradise. Dante's great work placed the Italian language on a firm basis, and it was used by the other great scholars of Italy who followed him.



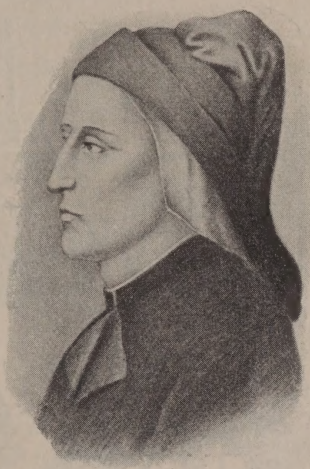
A GOTHIC DOORWAY

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

For a long time after the fall of the Roman empire, there were no theaters or plays. In the early Middle Ages the clergy began to present in many of the churches plays which were scenes from the life and death of the Savior. These plays were given generally at Christmas, Easter,

and Corpus Christi. There were also plays which showed scenes from the life of some great saint like Saint Francis, who had performed so many miracles. These plays were therefore called miracle plays.

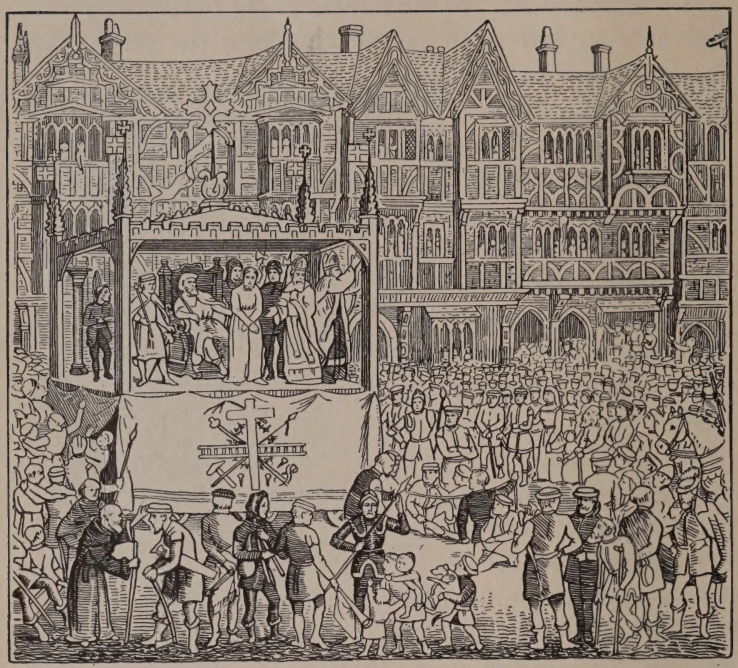
To accommodate the large numbers of people who were not able to find room in the churches, the plays were later moved outside the churches into open spaces like the village greens or commons. Small huts were erected, and the laity now took charge. In some countries, like England, the trade unions, or guilds, as they were called, produced the plays. In France societies were organized to carry them on.



DANTE

Each hut with its stage would produce one scene. The people moved on to the second hut to see the second scene. Then by moving still onward they could see the third and fourth scenes and as many more as were presented. After a time the stage was placed on wheels and moved along. This was called the pageant. These plays began at daybreak and frequently lasted for many days. They often told the story of the world from Creation to Doomsday or end of the world. We have today a suggestion of these early pageants in the floats which are seen in processions in many of our cities.

As these early plays were based on religion, they appealed to all the people, for at that time all Western Europe was united with the Catholic Church, under the headship of the Pope, and the stories were familiar to all.



A MIRACLE PLAY IN THE MIDDLE AGES

Later a band of actors would go from town to town, giving plays in the courtyard of inns or in the great halls of the nobles. Still later the players had a building erected. The plays now lost their religious character, and in this way the modern drama arose.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the reason for Gothic architecture? How did it differ from Romanesque?

2. Is there a Gothic building in your city?

3. Look up the life of Dante and the story of his famous poem.

4. See if you can find pictures of gargoyles.

5. Tell about the miracle plays of the Middle Ages.

6. Find, on the map, Bologna, Seville, Paris, Ghent, Hamburg, Cologne.

CHAPTER LXIV

THE RENAISSANCE

The Meaning of the Renaissance

For centuries after the fall of Rome wars, invasions, and disasters of all kinds were so prevalent in Europe that men were generally willing to remain shut up in their small towns or on their farms. They had no knowledge of what was going on beyond their horizon, and cared little.

The crusades brought about a wonderful change. Hundreds of thousands of men had gone to the East, and had seen the glories of the Greek city of Constantinople. They had looked with admiration on the beautiful Moorish buildings of Asia Minor, and had been aroused at the sight of the holy places of Palestine. The wealthy houses of the rich rulers and merchants of the East, with their stately halls filled with Oriental fabrics, alabaster lamps, velvet rugs, and furniture inlaid with pearl, had made them long for better houses for themselves. Western Europe awoke as from a sleep, and was curious to know what was going on in the world. The people were eager to seek out new lands, to try new experiments in science and art, to erect nobler buildings, and to study the writings of ancient authors. This activity has been called by historians the Renaissance, a word which means new birth.

For centuries men had seen about them the wonderful buildings, temples, and arches that had been erected by the Greeks and Romans, but had paid little attention to

these beautiful examples of Grecian and Roman art. In fact at times the noble temples were pulled down for building-stone, and statues were burned to make lime.

As an outcome of the Renaissance men began to take an active interest once more in ancient things. They repaired the buildings and temples, and studied the paintings and

A VIEW OF FLORENCE

sculpture that adorned them. In churches, monasteries, and palaces they made a careful search for manuscripts of ancient authors like Vergil, Horace, Cicero, Aristotle, and Homer, some of which were already moldy with age and neglect, and made copies of them. Thousands of manuscripts had of course been lost forever, but libraries were built in which to place these recovered treasures. The most valuable collection of manuscripts in the world was gathered into the Vatican Library of Rome.

The Renaissance in Italy

There was new life and activity among the Italian cities. This was the result of the growth of industry and commerce, which had begun at the time of the crusades. The cities had freed themselves from the feudal governments under which they had been living, and had become democratic city-states, like the cities of ancient Greece.

© Publishers' Photo Service, Inc.

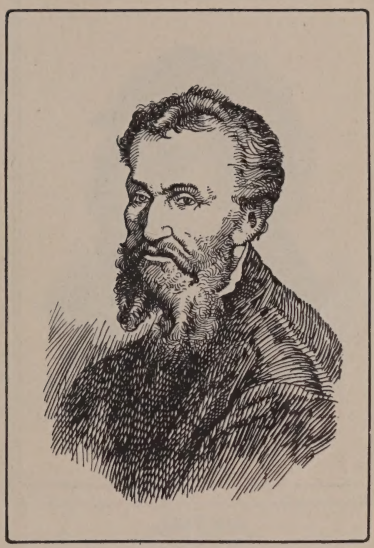
ST. PETER'S AND THE VATICAN PALACE

Florence, Genoa, Venice, Milan, and Pisa were the homes of wealthy merchants, whose palaces were filled with the beautiful fabrics of the Eastern world.

Among the Italian cities Florence was the leader, not only through the wealth of its citizens, but from the generous spirit of its rulers, who made it possible to gather there the greatest painters and sculptors of the age. Scholars came from Constantinople to teach earnest pupils the language of ancient Greece. The first Greek

grammar was written in Florence, by the teacher who had come to Italy from the Eastern capital on the Bosporus.

Dante stands forth as a great figure leading up to the Renaissance movement. His "Divine Comedy" was the first great work written in a native tongue in Europe, for nearly all scholars up to this time had written in Latin. Italian thus became the earliest leading modern European language.



MICHELANGELO

The buildings of the early Renaissance in Italy were designed on Greek and Roman models. They had rounded arches resting on Corinthian or Doric columns, and over all frequently appeared a vast dome, as we see on Saint Peter's Church, in Rome. In our own country we have a similar dome on the Capitol in Washington.

The active spirit of the Renaissance was aided by traders, who spread its influence as they moved along the great trade routes over the Alps, bringing to the markets of northern Europe the Oriental goods gathered at Genoa, Venice, and other Italian cities.

Language, Music, Painting, and Science

The languages of modern Europe began to be spoken by the educated classes. Latin and these modern tongues

were used in forming the great literatures of Italy, Spain, France, Germany, and England.

Better music was produced when the violin and harpsichord were perfected from the cruder instruments of earlier times. The beautiful cathedrals were filled with the rich and mellow tones of the organ.

RAPHAEL

There was great activity in painting. This was led in the fourteenth century by the Italian Giotto, some of whose pictures adorn the walls of the church of Saint Francis at Assisi. Giotto also designed the famous tower which rises over the city of Florence.

In Milan was painted the Last Supper, by Leonardo da Vinci, who was not only a painter and sculptor, but a famous engineer. Michelangelo, who carved the renowned statue of Moses, painted the frescoes in the Sistine Chapel of Rome. These frescoes show scenes from the Bible, from the Creation to the Flood. One of Angelo's pictures, called the Last Judgment, is considered to be the most wonderful picture in the world. Like Da Vinci, Michelangelo was active in painting, sculpture, designing, and engineering. He was famous as an architect. He wrote poetry and prose. He illustrates the wonderful activity of mind and

body which now urged men forward to perfect themselves that they might open the doors of the treasure houses of learning.

Other renowned artists of the Renaissance were Raphael, whose frescoes adorn the walls of the Vatican, Fra Angelico, who was a Dominican friar, and Titian, whose colors made famous the paintings of Venice.

COPERNICUS

Beyond the Alps appeared Rembrandt, Van Dyck, and Rubens. In Spain, Murillo and Velasquez produced marvelous paintings that have never been surpassed.

In the centuries following its rise in Italy the spirit of the Renaissance produced in the north of Europe great scholars like Colet, who introduced Greek into England, and More, who wrote a famous book called Utopia, a word which means nowhere. This book describes an imaginary country where everything is ideal. Erasmus, one of the greatest scholars of Europe, lived in Holland. Germany had the benefit of the brilliant mind of Reuchlin.

Copernicus, who was born in Poland, declared that the teaching of the Greek astronomers, who said the sun, moon, and stars revolved round the earth, was incorrect.

THE VOYAGES OF DISCOVERY

He declared that the sun was the center of the universe, and that the earth revolved round the sun.

Galileo improved the telescope, and saw the separate stars of the Milky Way and the moons of Jupiter.

Gunpowder changed the art of war. The compass opened the seas to the daring navigators. The Portuguese began to send their sailors down the coast of Africa; its southern cape was rounded by Diaz. Columbus, under the Spanish flag, sailed westward to give a new world to mankind.

Instead of accepting blindly what the great ancient scientists like Aristotle had written, as had been the custom, men now set out to examine things for themselves. They found that most of the facts in science given by ancient writers had been merely guesses, and were generally wrong. The scientists of the Renaissance thus paved the way for the brilliant scientific achievements of today.

CHAPTER LXV

THE MAKING OF BOOKS

The Papyrus

As we already know, the Egyptians made paper from the papyrus plant, which grew in large quantities along the banks of the Nile. On this paper they painted their peculiar figures or hieroglyphics. Each character or figure spelled out a word. As they read they rolled the papyrus paper sheet up at one end and gradually unrolled it at the other. An Egyptian book was therefore really a roll, which they put in its proper place in their library, like rolls of wall paper.

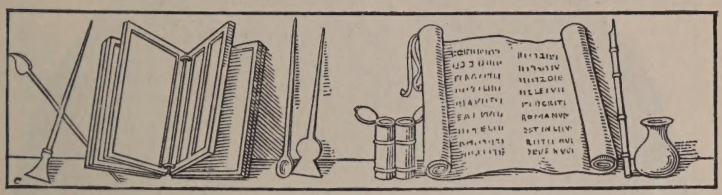
The Hindus, of India, used dried palm leaves for writing material. They sewed the leaves together at the side, making a type of book.

The Babylonians could not easily secure the papyrus plant, so they worked out, as we have seen, a plan for keeping records and making books. On soft clay bricks they pressed their wedge-shaped characters. By baking, these clay bricks became extremely hard. It is fortunate that these people used these baked bricks, for after thousands of years they have been found in the mounds of Babylon and Nineveh in almost perfect condition. In the last fifty years scholars have worked out the meaning of this peculiar writing, and now can read the story of what happened in the days of Cyrus and other mighty kings of Babylon and Nineveh. Every year scholars are

digging out these bricks from the heaps of ruins that were once the great cities of the valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers.

Books of the Greeks and Romans

The Greeks and Romans followed the ideas of the Egyptians, using a roll; but they made their rolls out of the dried skins of animals. These skins were at first made from calfskin, and were called vellum (from a Latin word meaning calf). Afterwards lambskins were used, and



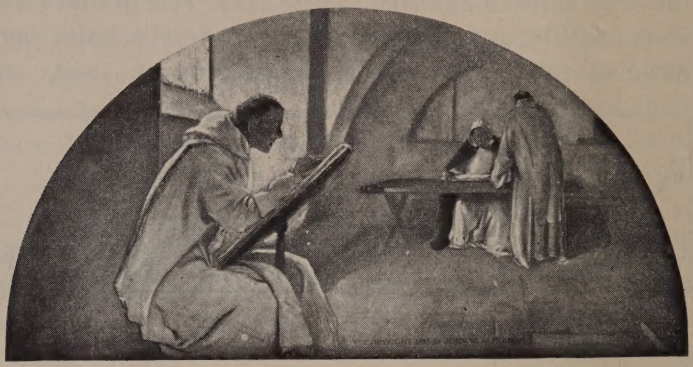
ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

were called parchment. They were very strong, and many have lasted for centuries. On these parchments were written the great works of the Greeks and Romans, which have come down to us. On these parchments there were no divisions of paragraphs, no commas, and no periods. Originally the letters of the alphabet were all capitals, made with straight lines, being cut into some hard material, such as stone or metal. The small letters were gradually developed from the capitals, by the use of pen and ink.

It is probable that the Chinese invented paper, and that it was brought to Europe by the Arabs. In Spain the Arabs made excellent paper, and the Spaniards took up the art. France, Holland, and England manufactured it also.

The writing of books in the early days was done en-

tirely by hand. In the monasteries the monks worked day after day, copying the works of the great authors of Greece and Rome. Nuns also were skillful in copying the manuscripts. Had it not been for these devoted monks and nuns, it is probable few of the great works of the ancient world would have been saved to us. No matter how hard the copyist worked, it required months and



THE MANUSCRIPT BOOK

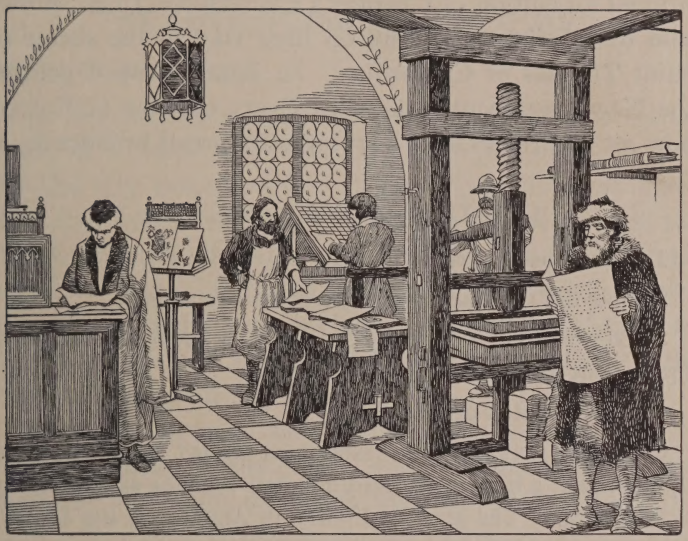
at times years to copy a book. A great library in those days might contain, therefore, only a few hundred books.

The Chinese had tried to make the work easier by cutting out of a wooden block an exact copy of the page. Having inked this block, they pressed a sheet of paper on it, and in this way made books very much faster. In Europe a similar process was brought in, and the books made by this method were called "block books."

Invention of Printing

One of the greatest inventions of all history was that of movable type. The single letters were cast in metal.

When once a page had been set up in type, thousands of copies could be printed from it. It is claimed Laurens Koster, of Haarlem, in Holland, printed from movable metal type as early as 1430. In 1450 John Gutenberg, of Mainz, in Germany, printed the Bible in Latin from



GUTENBERG'S PRESS

movable metal type, and established with John Fust a regular printing office, the first in the world.

The Germans, in casting their type, formed it to look as much as possible like the letters which had been written by hand with a quill pen. It is a heavy, dark type and is called Gothic.

The Italian type was thinner and rounder, and is called the Roman. It is the form of type used by most countries today. The first press was, of course, a very crude affair,

but books soon began to be printed in all the countries of Europe. In Venice, Aldus had a press where he printed beautiful Greek books; in Antwerp, Plantin issued excellent books. The Elzevirs, of Leiden, were publishers of texts of profound scholarship. In England, Caxton printed an edition of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, stories told by pilgrims who were on their way to the shrine of Saint Thomas of Canterbury. In Basel, Froben printed the New Testament in Greek. Every country of Europe now set up presses, and learning was spread broadcast.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was papyrus?

2. How did the Babylonians keep their records?

3. To whom are we greatly indebted for saving the works of the ancient authors?

4. Who invented printing?

5. In early days so much labor was needed to write a book by hand that a library of seven hundred volumes would be considered large. The greatest library in America is the Library of Congress. Find out how many volumes it has.

CHAPTER LXVI

THE ADVENTURES OF MARCO POLO

In the Oriental World

In the year 1260 two brothers and merchants named Polo, of Venice, were making a visit to Constantinople. To this city came goods of all kinds from Eastern lands. The Polo brothers decided to make a journey across the Black Sea, and visit some of the lands north of that great body of water. Crossing this sea, they went onward through southern Russia. They reached the Volga, the mightiest river of Europe, and visited the cities on the banks of this great waterway.

They now learned that Tartar tribes had swept down through Russia behind them, and they could not return home by the route by which they had come. They decided, therefore, to go on to the eastward, and see the cities and peoples of whom they now heard so much. They passed the Ural Mountains and the Caspian Sea. They heard of the great oil wells at Baku, which are now so famous and valuable to the world. They visited Bokhara, where they stayed for a long time. They met here some members of the court of a Tartar king, who were on their way to the residence of the Grand Khan, as the ruler of China was called.

The Polo brothers had learned the Tartar language during their long stay in Bokhara, and they were invited by the Tartar messengers to go with them to China. They

now started on the long journey across the steppes, or great plains of Asia. They crossed the vast marshes of eastern Siberia. They saw the great rivers, the Ob and the Yenisei, which at times overflowed and held back the

THE GREAT WALL OF CHINA

travelers. They went through the great forests of firs and birches that seemed to stretch without end before them. The cold of winter was intense and deep snow at times blocked their way.

After a year of this sort of travel they reached Cathay, as China was called at that time. The Grand Khan, who

lived near the present city of Pekin, received them with great kindness. They described to him how the people of Europe lived, what was their religion, and how many and how beautiful were their cities.

The palace of the Grand Khan was in the form of a square, six miles on each side. It was surrounded by a wall with twelve gates and a deep ditch. All about it were beautiful trees, green meadows, and parks with many kinds of animals. The numerous palaces were of marble, with wide, beautifully carved stairways leading up to them. The ceilings of the palaces were of gold. The roofs were made of bright-colored tiles. Vast treasures of gold, silver, and precious stones were piled up in the royal treasury. The streets were so straight that one could see from one gate to another. A huge bell, the largest in the world, rang at a certain time every night. After that no one was allowed to leave the city. A thousand men stood guard at every gate day and night.

GRAND KHAN OF TARTARY

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Trace, on the map, the route of the Polos.
2. What was the ruler of China called?
3. Describe the palace of the ruler of China.

CHAPTER LXVII

THE RESULTS OF MARCO POLO'S JOURNEYS

Marco Polo's Wonderful Journey

When the Polo brothers started homeward, the Grand Khan asked them to obtain for him a hundred missionaries for China from the Pope. The brothers were asked to return as soon as possible, and to bring with them some oil from the lamp in the Holy Sepulcher in Jerusalem. It required three years to make the long, dangerous journey to their home. They had been absent nine years when they reached Venice. One of the brothers found that his wife had died during his absence. His boy Marco was now fifteen years of age.

After two years in Venice the Polo brothers started once more for China, taking with them young Marco. It required three years and a half to reach the court of Cathay again. The Grand Khan was very glad to see them once more, and received them with great ceremony. He was especially interested in the boy Marco. The brothers told the Khan that the Pope, much to his regret, had been unable to furnish the missionaries he had asked for. They presented to the Khan the beautiful presents which the Pope had sent to him, and gave him the oil which they had obtained from the ever-burning lamp in the Holy Sepulcher in Jerusalem.

The brothers now lived near the court of the Grand Khan. Marco learned four of the native languages, and

the Khan became so fond of him that he sent him on important missions to distant lands. Marco noticed that the Khan was very much interested in descriptions of peoples and places, and especially of the way in which the people lived. He therefore made notes of all he saw and heard, and the Khan was always exceedingly pleased at the interesting tales Marco told him on his return from a mission.

© Publishers' Photo Service, Inc.

THE GREAT WATER GATE, PEKIN

This gateway is the southern entrance to the city

The Polo brothers remained with the Grand Khan for seventeen years. They were now wealthy, and naturally wished to return to their beautiful city of Venice, especially as they feared that if the Khan should die it would be difficult for them ever again to reach home. The Grand Khan, however, would not allow it; for he had become so fond of them that he wished them to remain with him.

He offered, instead, to increase their wealth and to give them still greater honors. It began to appear that they would never be able to see their home again.

At this time the Khan received three distinguished men who had been sent by the ruler of Persia with a message to him. The Persian king said in his message that his

CONFUCIUS AND SOME OF HIS PUPILS

wife had died, and that he wished the Khan to send him a beautiful maiden from among the relatives of the Khan to become his wife. The maiden was selected, and was sent to Persia with the Persian messengers. After being eight months on the route, they found the roads closed by warring Tartar tribes, and so they had to return to the court of the Khan.

The Persians now saw it was too dangerous to try to return home with the maiden, across the wide wastes of Asia. Marco Polo, who had just returned by boat from the East

Indies, told them how easy it would be to return to Persia by water. The Persians at once asked the Khan to send them home by ships, and to allow them to take the Polo family with them, since the Venetians were good seamen and could direct the ships safely homeward.

Return of the Polos

The Khan did not wish to give permission for his friends to depart, but he was not willing to offend the king of Persia, and so he said they could go. He fitted out fourteen ships, and the Polo brothers began their way homeward. They bore with them a golden tablet from the Grand Khan. This tablet ordered everybody to treat them well, and to give them everything they might need in the way of supplies. The fleet was two years in reaching Persia. When it arrived there, the king of Persia was dead, and his brother was on the throne. The son of the dead king, however, took the maiden and married her.

The Polo brothers were given an escort of horsemen through the dangerous country, and they finally reached Venice in safety. They had been absent twenty-four years and had almost forgotten their own language. No one knew them in their strange and worn-out clothes, and the people refused to believe that they were the long-lost travelers. The Polo brothers invited their relatives and friends to a banquet, and cutting open the seams of their old clothes, they brought forth the richest of gems and gold in abundance. Then they put on their beautiful silken garments, and all greeted them as indeed the long-lost brothers.

Marco Polo's story of the wonderful journeys was published, and had a great effect in Europe. Some doubted

the story, and called the author "Mister Million," on account of his telling of such great peoples and of such wonderful things in the East. His book showed how large Asia was, and proved that a wide sea lay to the eastward.

THE RETURN OF THE POLOS

It told of the great peoples of the Eastern world, of the palaces they lived in, and of their vast wealth. It gave Europe the first idea of Japan, Java, Siam, Sumatra, and Ceylon. It told of the Spice Islands, of the wonders of India and the land of Arabia. It described central Asia, and some lands which no white man saw again until

fifty years ago. It was the first account of the Far East, and was without doubt the cause of great exploring expeditions.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. How long was Marco Polo in China? Describe the journeys of the Polo brothers to China.

2. Trace the homeward journey of the Polos.

3. What was the name given to Marco Polo by the Venetians?

4. What effect did Marco Polo's book have on Europe?

5. What great work of man existing when Marco Polo was in China can be seen there today?

6. It took years for travelers in the thirteenth century to go from Venice to Peking. How long does it take today on the Trans-Siberian Railway?

7. Find, on the map, Venice, the Caspian Sea, Peking.

CHAPTER LXVIII

PRINCE HENRY THE NAVIGATOR; COLUMBUS

A Royal Geographer

A little more than a hundred years after Marco Polo, there was born to the king of Portugal a son who had a great share in making modern history. This was Prince Henry, called the Navigator because of his interest in ships and in exploration. In his youth he had joined the army which was waging war against the Moors in northern Africa. This military expedition was in fact a sort of crusade of Christians against Mohammedans.

Prince Henry was aroused with an earnest desire to push the trade of Portugal and find out what lay to the southward in Africa. Many persons at this time believed the tales which had been told for centuries, that such monsters lived in the Atlantic as would swallow ships and sailors, that men would be changed from white to black in an instant, that a boiling ocean raged about the equator, that no one could ever return against the northern winds, and that one would probably drop off the edge of the world, for some still believed the world to be flat.

Prince Henry built an observatory on the ocean front where he studied the winds, currents, and tides. Here he gathered geographers, mathematicians, map makers, sea captains, and mariners to help him in his work.

In 1415 Prince Henry sent his first expedition southward, along the coast of Africa. In 1455 he gave a

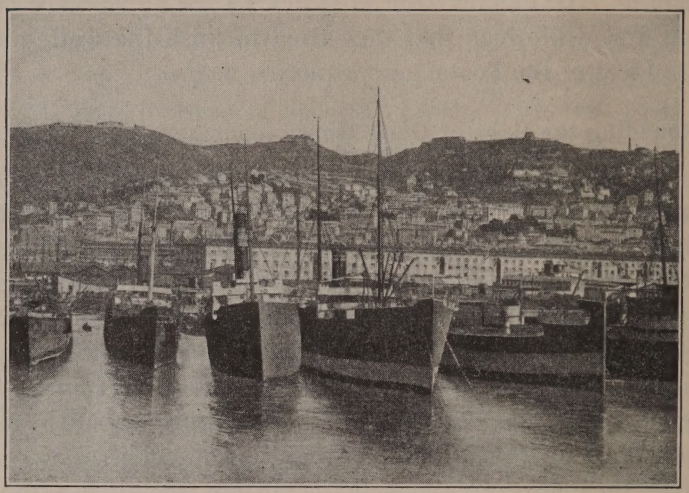
Venetian named Cadamosto a fleet to explore the African coast. Cadamosto reached a cape, which he named Verde, or green, from the grass and trees which he saw there. "The trees here," he wrote, "are continually green, and never wither like those in Europe." He explored the Senegal River for two hundred and fifty miles from its mouth. The natives were so struck by the appearance of the first white men that they tried to wash the white off the faces of the Portuguese explorers.

Rounding the Cape of Good Hope

In 1471 the Portuguese reached the equator. They reported that the North Star could barely be seen above the northern horizon, and that strange new groups of stars, or constellations, had come into view. Fifteen years later Bartholomew Diaz at last reached the southern point of Africa, and even sailed some distance beyond it up the eastern side, until his sailors rebelled and made him turn homeward. The way to India and the Spice Islands was now open to anyone brave enough to attempt it.

In the meantime plans for a voyage westward across the Atlantic to India had been growing in the brain of Christopher Columbus. Born in Genoa, where the harbor was always busy with vessels coming and going to all parts of the world, Columbus had entered, like so many Italians, the life of a sailor. He was, however, not only a sailor, but he learned to make maps and charts and instruments used at sea and he studied deeply the art of sailing vessels. He lived for nearly eight years in Lisbon, which was the center of geography study at that time. He heard here of the voyages along the African coast, and talked with many of the men who had made them. He himself

sailed north to Iceland and England, and went as far south as the coast of Guinea. He had carefully studied the book of Marco Polo and had made notes on its pages, as we can see today in Seville. He planned a westward journey to the Spice Islands and showed his plans to the king of Portugal and some of the leading men in that kingdom;



© Publishers' Photo Service, Inc.

THE WATER FRONT OF GENOA

but they rejected them as wild and absurd. He then went to Spain. After years of failure he at last received the good news that Queen Isabella had agreed to give him aid for his great expedition. With a little fleet of three ships he sailed from Spain on the third of August, 1492. Favored by the steady trade winds his vessels sailed westward, and on the twelfth of October he saw before him the land of the New World. America had been discovered, and a new era in the world's history was opened.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Give a brief sketch of Prince Henry the Navigator.

2. What were some of the things mariners of that day were afraid of?

3. Who first reached the southern point of Africa? What was the importance of this voyage?

4. What route would a Portuguese take to India today?

5. Where was Columbus born?

6. Under what flag did Columbus sail?

7. How long did Columbus take on his first voyage across the Atlantic?

8. Find, on the map, Lisbon, Genoa, Cape of Good Hope.

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

A.D. 1295: Marco Polo.
A.D. 1450: Invention of printing.
A.D. 1486: Diaz reaches the southern end of Africa.
A.D. 1492: Columbus discovers America.

CHAPTER LXIX

THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA

Discovering the Land of Opportunity

The land with its tropical trees and brilliant flowers where Columbus landed (October 12, 1492) was one of the Bahama Islands. He called it San Salvador, a name meaning Holy Redeemer. Holding aloft the royal banner, Columbus claimed the country he had discovered for the king and queen of Spain.

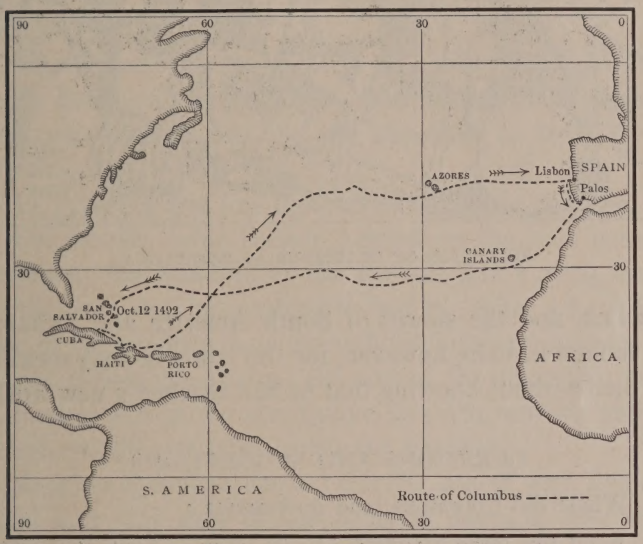
The copper-colored natives looked with awe at the ships with their white sails and at the strange men. Since Columbus believed he had reached Asia and India, he named these naked, painted natives Indians. Although the name was, of course, incorrect, it has remained to this day.

Columbus looked in vain for the rich cities and lands full of gold and spices which Marco Polo had described. After a few days at San Salvador, he sailed southwestward to find the mainland of Asia. He carried with him a letter from the king of Spain to the ruler, or Khan, of China. He soon saw on the horizon the beautiful island of Cuba. He noticed that the natives were smoking rolled leaves. This was the discovery by white men of the use of tobacco.

Columbus cruised along the coast eastward, and reached an island which he called Española. It is the present island of Haiti, or Santo Domingo. Here his largest ves-

sel was wrecked, and he left forty-four men with provisions to found a settlement while he went back to Spain to report to the king and queen, and to secure more vessels and supplies.

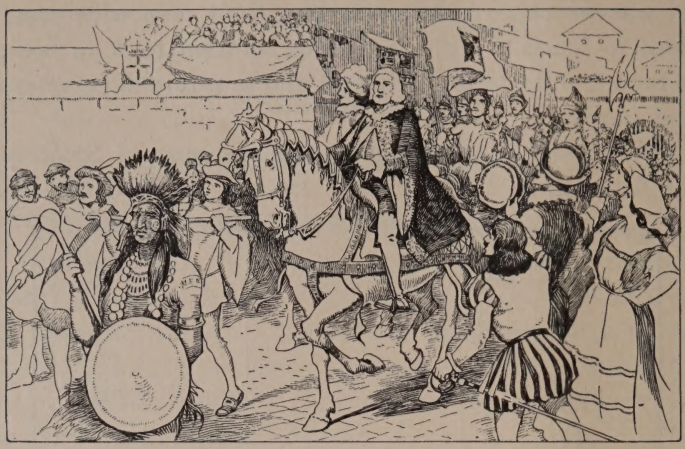
After a long and stormy voyage he reached Spain on the fifteenth of March, 1493. He was received with the



THE FIRST VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS

highest honors by the Spanish people, and his journey to Barcelona, where the Spanish rulers were staying, was a triumphal journey. He presented to them some Indians he had brought back with him, and birds, plants, and flowers from the lands he had visited. The news of his great discovery spread throughout Europe.

Columbus also made three other voyages, discovering the beautiful island of Porto Rico. He also discovered



RECEPTION OF COLUMBUS AT BARCELONA

Jamaica, and the shores of South America and Panama. He looked in vain, however, for the lands he was seeking. He died without knowing that he had reached a new world.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Where did Columbus land in America?

2. What two large islands did he discover on his first voyage?

3. Describe his return voyage.

4. What country did he believe he had reached?

5. How did his largest vessel compare with a modern steamship?

6. Columbus saw the natives of Cuba swinging in nets made of fiber. These nets were called by the natives *hamacas*. How do our hammocks resemble them?

CHAPTER LXX

SPANISH EXPLORATION

Spaniard and Aztec

The Spaniards were eager to take advantage of Columbus's discovery, and sent out many expeditions to explore the new lands and to find the waterway to India by the westward route.

In 1513 Florida was discovered by Ponce de León.

Six months later Balboa landed on the east coast of Panama. He was told by the Indians that a great sea lay to the west, and he resolved to find it. After a hard journey of twenty-four days through thickets and swamps and dense forests he reached the top of the mountain ridge. Climbing a tree, he saw before him the world's greatest ocean, which was later called the Pacific.

Another Spaniard, named Cortés, landed with five hundred and fifty men on the coast of Mexico. Far up on the high table-land lived a number of Indian tribes called the Aztecs, under a ruler named Montezuma.

The Aztecs had built up villages and cities of stone and sundried brick houses. The streets were narrow and canals led water to the fields for irrigation. They had large quantities of gold, silver, and copper. They were very cruel and often sent out expeditions against neighboring tribes to secure prisoners. These prisoners were offered up on the blazing altars of the Aztec gods. These altars were built on the top of high stone towers. Most

of the tribes in Mexico were hostile to the Aztecs, and wished to see them destroyed.

When Cortés arrived at the place where the city of Vera Cruz now stands, messengers hurried to tell Montezuma of the coming of the strangers whose ships looked like birds. Montezuma did not wish strangers of any kind to see his capital, and so he sent presents of gold and

THE MISSION AT SANTA BARBARA, CALIFORNIA

silver to them to keep them away. This was exactly what he should not have done. As soon as Cortés saw the gold and silver, he determined to go at once to seize Montezuma's mines and treasury. He sank his ships, so that his men must go on, as there was no way to return home. With five hundred and fifty Spanish soldiers and two hundred Indians he went up the steep slopes leading to the high table-land or plateau of Mexico.

Cortés was now joined by many tribes who wished to punish the cruel Aztecs, and without resistance he entered the capital of the Aztecs. After a short time, however, he was attacked by Aztecs who were armed with bows with which they shot arrows tipped with sharp stones. They used heavy war clubs also.

The Spaniards had muskets and cannon, and were protected by iron armor. In spite of this great advantage they were for a time in danger of being destroyed. They were driven from the city with so great loss that Cortés is said to have sat down and wept. A tree is pointed out to the visitor today in the suburbs of the city of Mexico which is said to be the very tree under which he rested and shed bitter tears for the many brave men he had lost on that fateful day. Later he rallied his men, secured new Indian allies, and defeated the Aztecs, after many desperate battles. All Mexico fell into the hands of the Spaniards.

Pizarro; the Spanish Missions

In 1531 another Spaniard, named Pizarro, sailing from Panama, conquered Peru with its valuable mines. Immense quantities of gold and silver vases, ornaments, and plates fell into his hands.

Spanish missionaries followed in the footsteps of the soldiers, and founded missions with churches and schools in the conquered lands. They gave the natives new seeds and plants, and taught them agriculture and stock raising. They brought printing presses, and printed books in many Indian languages. They taught the children trades and the Spanish language. They laid out roads and built bridges, and spread the Spanish language, from the Mississippi to the southern part of South America.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Who discovered Florida?

2. What European first saw the Pacific Ocean?

3. Describe the Aztec civilization.

4. How did the Spaniards try to civilize the natives?

5. Where are Spanish missions to be seen today?

6. The Egyptians used light chairs, which could be carried easily from place to place. In recent years we have often used heavy furniture made in mission style. What does the word "mission" here mean?

CHAPTER LXXI

THE JOURNEY ROUND THE WORLD

Magellan's Wonderful Journey

Ferdinand Magellan, a native of Portugal, had visited the Spice Islands on a Portuguese vessel which sailed by way of the Cape of Good Hope. He now believed he could find a shorter passage to these islands, through the new lands of the west. He failed to secure the aid of the king of Portugal, and went to Spain, where he received from the king five vessels. He sailed from Seville in 1519. Cruising along the east coast of South America, he passed the first winter in Patagonia, and discovered the strait since named in his honor. His fleet passed successfully through the stormy waters of the strait, and sailed out into the broad ocean beyond. The ocean was so calm that he named it the Pacific.

For nearly four months Magellan sailed onward over the smooth sea without seeing inhabited land. Food and water ran short, and the dreadful disease called scurvy broke out. This disease was caused by lack of fresh vegetables and fresh meat. Day by day sailors died and were buried at sea.

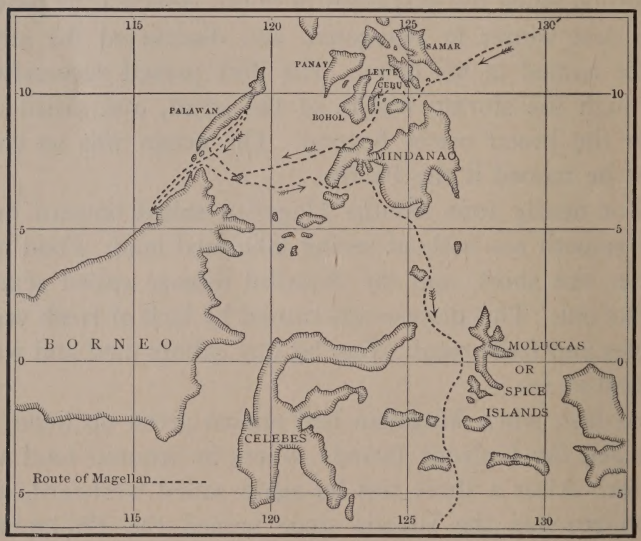
At last, when Magellan had almost given up hope, he reached the Ladrone Islands, where he secured food and water. After a short rest he again sailed westward, and soon reached the islands since named the Philippines. This was in 1521. Spain held her title to these islands

until 1898, when the islands were transferred to the United States at the close of the war with Spain.

Within a month after reaching the islands Magellan was killed in a battle with the natives. One of his vessels, laden with cloves, sailed back to Spain by way of the Cape of Good Hope. This was the first time anyone had gone round the world. It proved that the world was round, that America was a continent and not a part of Asia, and that the world's greatest ocean lay between America and Asia.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Trace the route of Magellan.
2. What was he seeking on his great journey?
3. What famous islands did he discover?



THE PHILIPPINES AND SPICE ISLANDS

CHAPTER LXXII

PORTUGUESE EXPLORATION

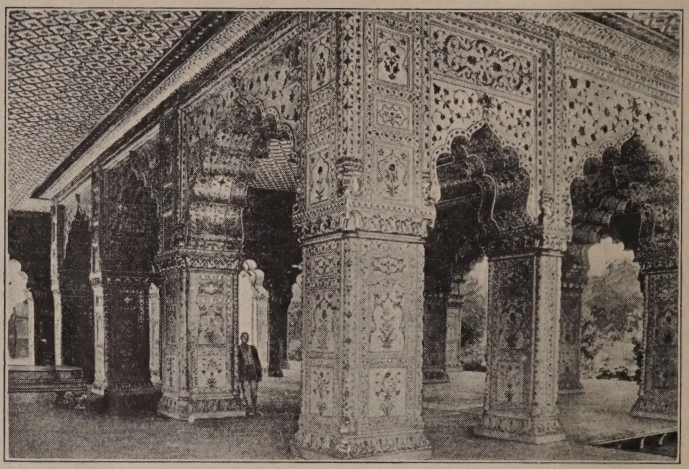
The Portuguese Reach India

We have seen that Bartholomew Diaz in 1486 had reached the Cape of Good Hope, and opened the way to India by sea. Eleven years later (1497) the goal was reached. Da Gama sailed southward from Lisbon, reached the Cape of Good Hope, and rounded it in spite of severe storms. He arrived at India ten months after sailing from Lisbon, and entered the harbor of Calicut in southwestern India. Here he saw the rich bazaars or markets where were displayed spices, embroidery, ebony, precious stones, sandalwood, and beautiful silks.

Da Gama loaded his vessels with spices, and reached home in safety with his valuable cargo. An all-water route to India had been found, and Lisbon became one of the richest cities of the world. The Portuguese now opened up a regular trade with the Far East. Cabral, on his way to India with an expedition, was carried far out of his course by the ocean current, called the south Atlantic eddy, and was surprised to see land on the western horizon. He went ashore and claimed the country for Portugal. It was that part of South America later called Brazil. It remained a possession of Portugal for almost four hundred years, until when it became a republic. Even to this day the people of Brazil speak Portuguese, while most of the other countries of South America speak Spanish.

Other Portuguese vessels went beyond India, sailed round the Malay Peninsula, and along the east coast of China. Here at Macao, not far from the present great port of Hongkong, they founded a trading post.

As the two great exploring nations Spain and Portugal were likely to have trouble over the lands each country



© Publishers' Photo Service, Inc.

A ROYAL HALL IN INDIA

was claiming, they asked the Pope to arrange a peaceful settlement. He drew an imaginary line from pole to pole through the Atlantic Ocean one hundred leagues or three hundred miles west of the Azores and the Cape Verde Islands. This line was changed in the following year (1494) to three hundred and seventy leagues or about eleven hundred miles west of the Cape Verde Islands. All lands to the westward of this line, it was declared, belonged to Spain; all to the east of it belonged to Portugal. As a result of drawing this line of division there was peace

between these two great nations for many years. At this time the other nations of Europe were not active in exploration.

The Name of America

In 1499 Americus Vespucius was a member of an expedition which sailed westward in the track of Columbus. He also took part in later expeditions which touched Brazil and the northern coasts of South America. After his last voyage (1503) he wrote a description of his journeys and of what he had seen. He called the lands to the west the "New World." By chance Martin Waldseemüller, a teacher of geography in a small college in eastern France, read the description which Americus Vespucius had written. As Waldseemüller was at this time writing and publishing a little geography, he suggested in this book that the name America be given to the new world; for he believed Americus Vespucius had discovered it. The name was applied first to South America, and later to North America. It is for this reason that the western continents are called America, and not Columbia.

When the news of Columbus's voyage reached England, John Cabot was living there. He was a native of Italy. He asked the king, Henry the Seventh, to furnish a ship to seek new lands to the west. With only eighteen men in a tiny vessel he sailed from the port of Bristol in 1497, taking a direct northwesterly route.

He reached North America somewhere near Cape Breton Island. He planted a cross and took possession of the country in the name of the English king. He made another voyage the following year, when he cruised along the coast from Virginia to Newfoundland.

These voyages were important because later, as a result of them, the English claimed a large part of North America. At the time, however, very little attention was paid to Cabot's discovery, and for a hundred years no more expeditions left England for the New World.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Why did the Portuguese seek India?
2. Describe Da Gama's voyage.
3. How did the Portuguese secure Brazil?
4. What was the Line of Demarcation?
5. How did America receive its name?
6. Do you know any places named after Columbus?
7. What was the result of Cabot's voyage?
8. Why do not the people of Brazil speak Spanish, like the people elsewhere in South America?

CHAPTER LXXIII

DE SOTO AND CORONADO

De Soto reaches the Mississippi; Coronado

While the Portuguese were building up their trade with India by an all-water route around Africa, the Spaniards were still seeking a westward passage through America, and were leading exploring expeditions in the New World.

In 1539 De Soto, the governor of Cuba, landed on the coast of Florida in search of gold. With about six hundred soldiers he went westward, pushing his way slowly through the swamps and forests of the present states of Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi. He had to fight the Indians on every side, for they had become hostile to him because of his cruelty.

After two years of hardship and loss of men he reached the banks of the Mississippi River. He crossed this river, entered Arkansas, and wandered about for another year before he again came to the Mississippi. Here he died, and was buried in its waters. It is said of him that the most wonderful thing he found was his own grave.

Constructing rude rafts, the survivors of the expedition floated down the river to the Gulf of Mexico, where they were rescued.

At the very time De Soto was wandering about in Arkansas, another Spanish expedition, led by Coronado, was only a few hundred miles away from him to the westward. In fact an Indian woman who had been with Coronado ran

away and fell in with the outposts of De Soto's forlorn army after nine days' travel.

Coronado's expedition had started from the western part of Mexico with three hundred Spaniards. His men were heavily armed, and rode on horseback. He had also eight hundred Indians, and large droves of pigs and sheep.

SPANISH EXPLORATIONS

The Spaniards in Mexico had been told that there were seven cities of great wealth to the north, and Coronado was sent to find them. He pushed on across the burning deserts of western Mexico and Arizona, seeking the cities in vain. Instead he found only Indian towns with houses of sun-dried brick and poverty-stricken natives. One of his officers discovered the Colorado River and the Canyon of the Colorado, one of the world's greatest wonders.

Coronado went as far north as Kansas, meeting immense herds of buffaloes. After two years of wandering he turned back to Mexico in great disappointment. He

felt that his expedition had been a failure, because he had not found the rich cities of which he had heard such tales.

At this same time an expedition under Cabrillo sailed from a port on the west coast of Mexico to find a strait that would give a new route to Europe. Cabrillo explored the coast of California, and discovered the bay of San Diego. He sailed north as far as Oregon, but missed, both going and coming, the Golden Gate and the beautiful harbor of San Francisco.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What great river did De Soto reach?

2. What became of his expedition?

3. Describe Coronado's journey.

4. What famous natural wonder was discovered by one of Coronado's men?

CHAPTER LXXIV

FRENCH EXPLORATION

Cartier on the Saint Lawrence

The French king Francis the First after a time began to take an interest in Western exploration. According to the story, when his attention was called to the division of the world by the Spaniards and the Portuguese, he is said to have remarked, "Show me the will of Father Adam leaving the world to these two nations."

Acting on this idea, he sent, in 1523, an explorer named Verrazano to the West to find territory for him. Verrazano reached America and sailed along the coast from Hatteras to the Bay of Fundy.

Eleven years later the French king sent Cartier to find a route around North America to Asia and the East. Cartier discovered the Saint Lawrence River. The following year (1535) he went again to America and sailed up the Saint Lawrence to the site of the present city of Montreal. Here he found a thriving settlement of the Algonquin Indians. Cartier claimed all the lands about the river for France. In 1541 the French tried to found a colony near the site of Quebec, but the cold winter killed many of the settlers. When spring came and the river was free from ice, the remainder were glad to get back to France. For more than sixty years the French took no further part in the settlement of Canada, and few Frenchmen came to America except to the fishing grounds.

As we have seen, when an explorer discovered a land, he laid claim to it for the king of the country under whose flag he had sailed. Columbus claimed for Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain the lands he discovered. Cabot made a similar claim for Henry the Seventh of England, and Cartier for Francis the First, who was the king of France.

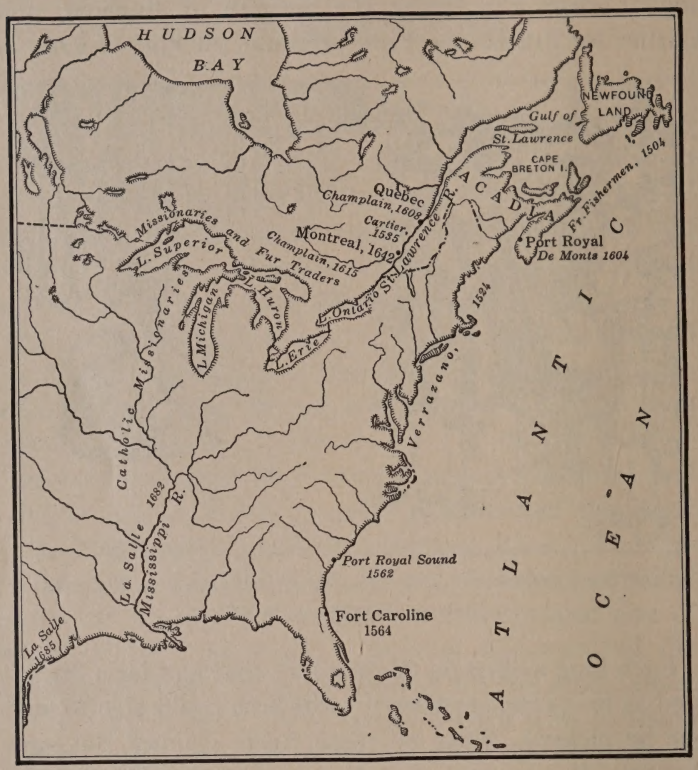
CARTIER ARRIVING AT THE ALGONQUIN VILLAGE ON THE SITE OF WHICH MONTREAL IS BUILT

Each king looked on the territory that had been discovered as his personal property, which he could give to anyone he pleased. Since all these rulers claimed the same territory, it is evident that sooner or later there would be trouble about it, when they tried to found colonies.

The Spaniards under Menendez made the first permanent settlement in the present limits of the United States, at Saint Augustine, in Florida, in 1565, driving out or killing all the French settlers who had already arrived there.

Champlain and La Salle; Louisiana

After the expedition of Cartier in 1534, the French paid little attention to Canada for many years. They became active again in 1608, and sent the brave Champlain as



FRENCH EXPLORATIONS AND SETTLEMENTS

governor. He founded Quebec, on the lofty height above the Saint Lawrence River. Small settlements were made along the banks of this stream, and French missionaries and traders pushed westward even to Lake Superior.

Another Frenchman, named La Salle, sailed down the entire length of the Mississippi River, to the Gulf of Mexico. Standing here where the great flood of waters pours into the Gulf, he erected a cross and a post with the arms of France carved on it. He claimed the entire country drained by the river for France, and named it Louisiana, in honor of Louis the Fourteenth, king of France. This journey of La Salle gave France the vast territory along the Mississippi as far west as the Rocky Mountains.

Forts were built and settlements made at important points in the western country, at Detroit, Sault Sainte Marie, Saint Louis, and many other places. At the mouth of the Mississippi, New Orleans was founded, and was destined to become a great city.

Like a huge crescent the French settlements extended from the mouth of the Saint Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico. The English were too busy with wars and other affairs on the continent of Europe to follow up Cabot's discovery, and to push their claim to North America as the result of that discovery.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. Under what flag did Verrazano sail?

2. How did France secure Canada?

3. What is the oldest city in the United States?

4. Give the results of La Salle's expedition.

5. In the century from 1450 to 1550 more of the world was discovered than in all the ages before that time. What two great discoveries have been made in recent years and who made them?

CHAPTER LXXV

THE WARS OF RELIGION; THE ARMADA

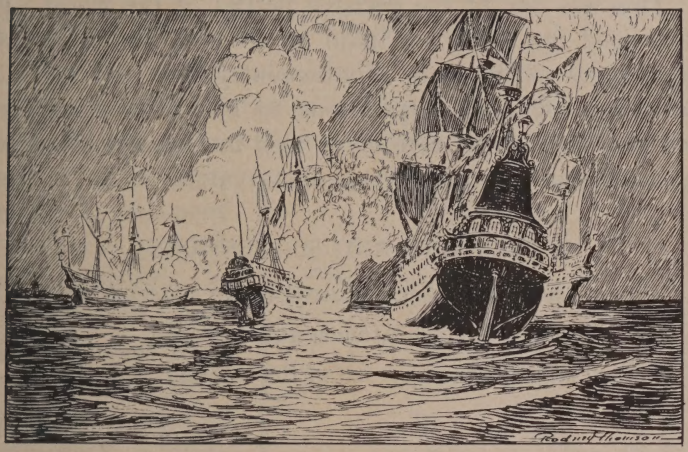
The Reformation

Two great events occurred during the sixteenth century which were destined to have a lasting effect on the world's history. The first great event was an uprising against the church. In 1517 Martin Luther, in Germany, led a revolt against the teachings of the Catholic Church and the Pope as head of the Church. This revolt, known in history as the Reformation, spread widely, and northern Germany, parts of Switzerland, Holland, and the Scandinavian countries adopted the teachings of Luther and his followers. Southern Europe remained in the fold of the Catholic Church partly through the efforts of the Society of Jesus. This religious order was founded by a Spaniard, Saint Ignatius Loyola, who had been in his early life a soldier. After a thorough training the members went forth as missionaries not only to the countries of Europe but to the most distant lands. They also opened far and wide schools and colleges for the training of youth.

In 1534 Henry the Eighth of England, who at first had opposed Luther, left the Catholic Church and established a national church called the Church of England. England, Scotland, and Wales became for the most part Protestant, but Ireland remained largely Catholic. This division in religious belief led to cruel strife and open warfare in many of the countries of Europe.

The Defeat of the Armada

The second great event of the sixteenth century grew out of the Reformation. Spain had remained loyal to the Catholic Church, and the feeling between her and England became so bitter that war broke out. To attack England, Spain gathered a hundred and twenty vessels, bearing



FIRESHIP OF THE BRITISH FLEET

thirty thousand soldiers. This fleet was called the Invincible Armada, *armada* being Spanish for an armed fleet.

When the watchers on the English coast saw the Spanish boats on the horizon, word was signaled far and wide, and the English ships were made ready for battle. The English sent fire ships to drift among the Spanish vessels, creating a panic. The small quick-moving English boats, attacking the large, slow Spanish vessels, were able to pick them off one after another.

After losing many of their ships the Spaniards sought safety in flight. They sailed northward, to go round Scot-

land and Ireland. The English boats followed, attacking them from the rear. A terrible tempest broke over the stormy waters of the north, and many of the Spanish vessels were wrecked along the coasts. The expedition was a failure, and only a fourth of the Spaniards ever reached home again.

This was one of the decisive battles of the world. It destroyed the power of Spain on the sea, and gave the supremacy to England. That country now felt free to send out colonizing expeditions to North America, especially since there were many men in England who had no work and were on the verge of starvation.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What two great events occurred in the sixteenth century?
2. Describe the Spanish Armada and its defeat.
3. What was the leading result of that defeat?

CHAPTER LXXVI

ENGLISH COLONIZATION

Colonies of the English, Dutch, and French

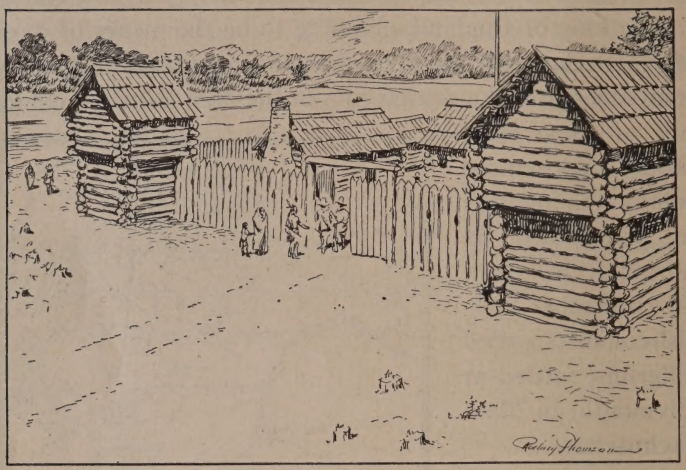
The king of England, claiming to be the owner of most of North America, granted charters or permits to trading companies to make settlements in the New World. Under one of these companies a permanent colony was founded at Jamestown, in Virginia, in 1607. In 1620 other English colonists, called Pilgrims, settled at Plymouth, in Massachusetts.

ENGLISH EXPLORATIONS

Now other vessels began to carry out colonists. Maryland was founded under Lord Baltimore, Pennsylvania under William Penn, and Georgia under Oglethorpe. Other colonies were founded in the Carolinas and at many other places along the Atlantic seaboard.

In 1609 Henry Hudson, sailing under the flag of Holland, reached and explored the Hudson River. In 1614

the Dutch settled on Manhattan Island, at the mouth of the river. They placed settlements along its banks, and built a fort at Albany. They built a fort at Hartford also, on the Connecticut River. Hearing that Swedish colonists had come to Delaware and had made a settlement on land which they claimed as their own, they went and with a small armed force quickly drove them out.



A FRENCH FORT

The Dutch colony of New Amsterdam (as New York was then called) was like a wedge between the English colonies of New England and the English colonies to the south. The English claimed all the territory along the Atlantic, and in a few years sent an armed force to capture the Dutch colony of New Amsterdam. The vessels appeared at Manhattan Island, and quickly captured it (1664). There was now an unbroken line of English colonies from Maine to Florida. These colonies claimed

that their land extended westward to the Pacific Ocean; but, as we have seen, the French had got ahead of them and had built forts along the Ohio, Illinois, and Mississippi rivers. They had built forts at important points along the Great Lakes also.

There was a great difference in the form of government in the colonies under the flag of France and in the colonies under the flag of England. New France, as the French colonies were called, was subject to the rule of the king of France. He made the laws, and told who could settle and what they were allowed to do. The settlers had no voice in ruling themselves, and hence there was no opportunity to build up a series of strong, self-reliant colonies.

Unlike the French, the English colonists from the first were given and at times used without permission a large amount of self-government. They met in town meetings, raised money by taxation, organized their militia, and built roads, bridges, and schools. They became in this way self-reliant.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What voyage gave the king of England a claim to North America?

2. Where was the first permanent settlement made?

3. Why did the Dutch settle on the Hudson River?

4. How long did they hold their colony?

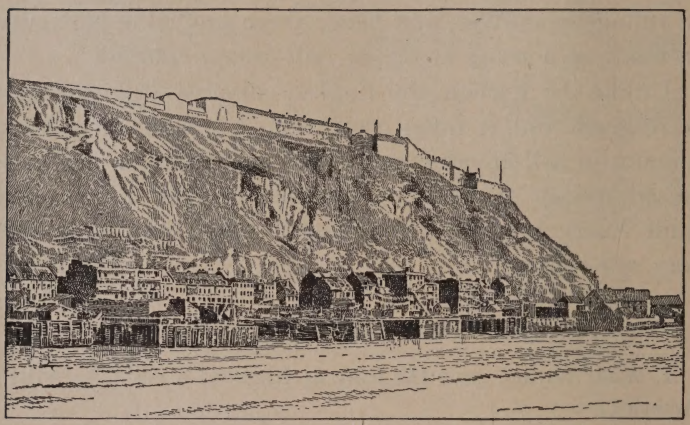
5. Locate, on the map, Jamestown, Baltimore, New Amsterdam, Philadelphia.

CHAPTER LXXVII

THE DOWNFALL OF FRANCE IN AMERICA; THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

The French and Indian Wars

There were at this time constant wars between nations on the continent of Europe. France and England were



QUEBEC

in conflict for nearly a hundred years. The European troubles spread to the New World, and in 1689 war broke out in America between England and France. This was the first of a series of four wars which continued for seventy-four years.

The powerful league of Iroquois Indians in the State of New York were the friends and became the allies of

the English. The other Indians, who formed the great Algonquin family, were friends of the French. There was cruel warfare along the northern border, but little except bloodshed and cruelty was accomplished by either side.

SCALING THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM

In 1754 the last of the wars began. After severe battles along the frontier, the English drew up their fleet before Quebec, the strongest fortress in North America. Wolfe, the English commander, conceived the plan of attacking Quebec from the land side. There was one portion of the river front that was so steep that it was practically unguarded. With thirty-five hundred men

Wolfe climbed up a steep path in the darkness (September 12, 1759) and successfully landed his men and guns on the Plains of Abraham. When day broke, Montcalm, the French commander, saw the red-coated lines of the English drawn up for battle. Instead of staying within their strong lines and compelling the British to attack, the French rushed out and were defeated. Both Montcalm and Wolfe fell. On the monument which has been erected to the memory of both these brave commanders there is a Latin inscription, which reads in English, "Valor gave a united death, History a united fame, Posterity a united monument."

NORTH AMERICA AT THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH WARS, 1763

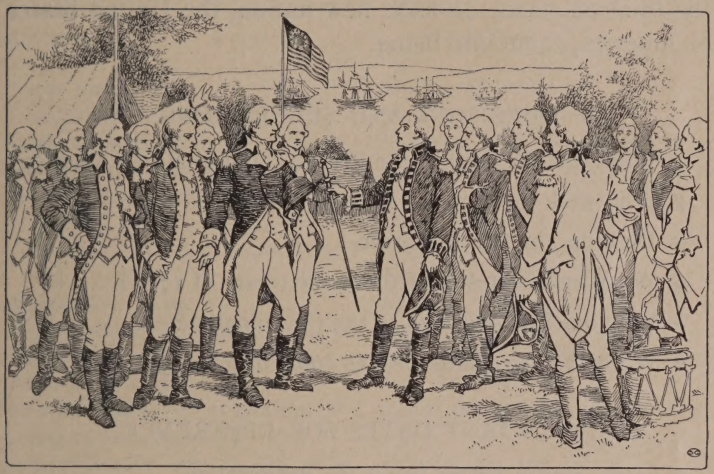
End of French Power in America

The battle of the Plains of Abraham is another of the decisive battles of the world. The French empire in America was ended, and the vast territory of Canada, occupying a half of the continent of North America, passed under the British, who now rose to be the great colonial power of the world.

In the treaty of peace France surrendered Canada to the English. France gave to Spain, her ally, the great territory west of the Mississippi River, called Louisiana. In the war the English had taken Havana, in Cuba, and

Manila, in the Philippines, from Spain. To get these back, Spain gave Florida to England. As a result of these events, in 1763 England held all North America east of the Mississippi River, and Spain held the remainder. French territory disappeared from the map of North America.

These wars of the English and French in America had lasting results. They had cost a great deal of money,



THE SURRENDER AT YORKTOWN

and the English thought it necessary to keep a large standing army here to protect what she had won. To meet the expenses of the war and of this army, she taxed the colonies without their consent. The colonists had been trained in arms by the wars, and as they no longer feared either the French or the Indians, they refused to pay these taxes. The quarrel between England and her colonies grew more and more bitter until war broke out between them.

The Revolution; Birth of the New Nation

In 1776 by the Declaration of Independence the colonies declared themselves to be free and independent states. The war of the Revolution was a victory for the young nation when the British laid down their arms at Yorktown (1781). By the treaty of peace signed at Paris in 1783 the king of England acknowledged the independence of the thirteen states, and the new nation, the United States of America, came into being.

QUESTIONS AND SUGGESTIONS

1. What was the basis of the French claim to North America?
2. Who were the Iroquois?
3. Describe the fall of Quebec.
4. What was the result of the peace treaty of 1763?
5. Why did England wish to tax the colonists?
6. When did the United States come into being?

IMPORTANT DATES FOR REFERENCE

A.D. 1517 : Martin Luther begins the Reformation.
A.D. 1521 : Cortés conquers Mexico.
A.D. 1521 : Magellan discovers the Philippine Islands.
A.D. 1535 : Cartier explores the Saint Lawrence River.
A.D. 1565 : Saint Augustine founded.
A.D. 1588 : Defeat of the Invincible Armada.
A.D. 1608 : Champlain founds Quebec.
A.D. 1609 : Henry Hudson explores the Hudson River.
A.D. 1614 : Dutch take possession of New Netherland.
A.D. 1763 : New France passes into hands of the English.
A.D. 1776 : The Declaration of Independence.
A.D. 1781 : Surrender of Yorktown.
A.D. 1783 : Treaty of peace between Great Britain and the United States.

INDEX

KEY TO PRONUNCIATION

ă *as in* fat	ē *as in* here	ō *as in* rope	ŭ *as in* up
ā *as in* name	ĭ *as in* it	oi *as in* oil	ū *as in* use
ä *as in* arm	ī *as in* ice	o͝o *as in* foot	û *as in* urn
ĕ *as in* bed	ŏ *as in* not	o͞o *as in* food	

Aaron (ăr′ŭn), 23
Abraham (ā′ bra hăm), 18
Academy (a kăd′ē mĭ), the Greek, 76
Acropolis (a krŏp′ō lĭs), 53, 61
Actium (ăk′shĭ ŭm), naval battle of, 126
Adrianople (ăd rĭ a nō′pl), battle of, 169
Africa, Vandals in, 175
Africa conquered by the Moors, 268
Agamemnon (ăg a mĕm′nŏn), 71
Ahriman (ä′rĭ man), 36
Ahura-Mazda (ä′ho͝o ra-mäz′da), 36
Aidan (ā′dan), Saint, 247
Aix-la-Chapelle (āks lä shä pĕl′), 234
Alaric (ăl′a rĭk), the Goth, 173
Albany, 350
Albert of Cologne, 284
Alcuin (ăl′kwĭn), 194, 248
Aldine (ăl′dīn) Press, 312
Alesia (a lē′shĭ a), siege of, 120
Alexander (ăl ĕg zăn′der) the Great, 88
Alexandria (ăl ĕg zăn′drĭ a), 91
Alfred the Great, 229
Algonquin (ăl gŏn′kĭn), Indians, 353
Alhambra (ăl hăm′bră), 267
Alphabet, invention of, 27, 28
Alpheus (ăl fē′ŭs), 70
Amalfi (ä mäl′fē), 280
Ambrose, Saint, 169
America, discovery of, 324; name of, 337
Anabasis (a năb′a sĭs), 41
Angles invade Britain, 200
Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, 255
Anthony, Saint, 251
Antony (ăn′tō nĭ), Mark, 125
Aphrodite (ăf rō dī′tē), or Venus, 46
Apis (ā′pĭs), 8
Apollo (a pŏl′ō), 47; oracle of, 38, 48
Apostles, the, 152
Appian (ăp′ĭ an) Way, 129
Aquinas (a kwī′nas), St. Thomas, 283
Arbela (är bē′la), battle of, 93
Architecture, Greek, 63; Moorish, 271; Gothic, 292; Romanesque, 292
Ares (ā′rēz), or Mars, 47
Aristides (ăr ĭs tī′dēz), 65
Aristotle (ăr′ĭs tŏt l), 76
Ark of the Covenant, 21, 23
Armada (är mā′da), Spanish, 347
Art of the Greeks, 63
Artaxerxes (är tăk sûrk′sēz), 40

Artemis (är′tē mĭs), 47
Arthur (är′thŭr), King, 223
Aryan (ār′yan), 36
Assisi (äs sē′zē), Saint Francis of, 258
Assyria (a sĭr′ĭ a), rise of, 32
Astronomy, Egyptian, 11; Babylonian, 31
Athena (a thē′na), or Minerva, 46, 54
Athens (ăth′ĕnz), life in, 53
Athens and Sparta, war between, 85
Attila (ăt′ĭ la), 176
Augustine (aw gŭs′tĭn), Saint, 174
Augustine of England, 181, 201
Augustus (aw gŭs′tŭs), Emperor, 127
Aztecs (ăz′tĕks), the, 330

Babylon, glories of, 34; captured by Cyrus the Great, 39
Babylonia (băb ĭ lō′nĭ a), life in, 31
Bacchus (băk′ŭs), 47
Bacon, Roger, 284
Badr (bäd′r), battle of, 263
Bagdad (băg′dăd), glory of, 265
Balboa (bäl bō′ä), 329
Baltimore, Lord, 349
Barbarossa (bär ba rŏs′a), 278
Barcelona (bär sē lō′na), 327
Basel (bä′zel), 312
Basil (băz′ĭl), Saint, 252
Bayeux (bä yû′) Tapestry, 237
Bede (bēd), the Venerable, 247, 254
Behistun (bā hĭs to͞on′) Rock, 40
Belshazzar (bĕl shäz′ar), 39
Benedict (bĕn′ē dĭkt), Saint, 253
Bergen, 286
Bethlehem (bĕth′lē hĕm), 150
Blandina (blăn dē′na), 156
Bohemund (bō′hē mŭnd), the crusader, 275
Bologna (bō lōn′yä), University of, 283
Bonaventure (bō na vĕn′tūr), Saint, 283
Boniface (bŏn′ĭ fās), Saint, 249
Books, making of, 308; printing of, 310
Bouvines (bo͞o vēn′), battle of, 242
Brazil, 335
Brendan, 246
Brennus (brĕn′ŭs), 107
Brian Boru (brī′ăn bō ro͞o′), 250
Bristol, 285, 337
Britain (brĭt′ĭn), Romans in, 120, 200
Bruges, 286
Brutus (bro͞o′tŭs), 125
Budda (bo͞od′a), the, 94
Byzantium (bĭ zăn′shĭ ŭm), 78

Cabot (kăb′ŭt), 337
Cabral (kä brăl′), 335
Cabrillo (kă brĭl′yō), 341
Cadamosto (kä′dä mōs′tō), 323
Cædmon (kăd′mŭn), 247
Cæsar (sē′zar), Julius, 115
Cæsar, in Gaul, 119; ruler of the world, 123; reforms the calendar, 124; assassination of, 125
Caledonia (kăl ē dō′nĭ a), 199
Calendar, Egyptian, 11
Calendar of Cæsar, 124
Calendar of Pope Gregory, 125
Calvary, 153
Cambridge, University of, 283
Cambyses (kăm bĭ′sēz), 39
Camelot (kăm′ē lŏt), 223
Camillus (ka mĭl′ŭs), 107
Canaan (kā′nan), 18, 21

Canada ceded to England, 354
Cannæ (căn′ē), battle of, 112
Canterbury (kăn′tûr bĕr ĭ), 201
Canute (ka nūt′), King, 232
Carolingians (kăr ō lĭn′jĭ anz), the, 184
Carthage (kär′thāj), founding of, 26; war with Rome, 109; fall of, 113
Cartier (kärtyā′), 342
Catacombs, Roman, 156
Cathay (ka thā′), or China, 314
Cathedrals, Gothic, 238
Caxton, William, 312
Ceres (sē′rēz), 47
Chæronea (kĕr ō nē′a), battle of, 87
Chaldeans (kăl dē′anz), 33
Châlons (shä lōn′), battle of, 176
Champlain (shăm plān′), 344
Champollion (shăm pōl′yŏn), 14
Charlemagne (shär′lē mān), era of, 192; crowned Emperor, 198
Charles Martel, 269
Cheops (kē′ŏps), 7
China, 314
Chivalry, development of, 224
Christ, birth of, 150
Christianity, beginnings of, 150
Cicero (sĭs′ûr ō), 125, 144
Cimbri (sĭm′brī) and Teutons (tū′tŏnz), defeat of, 163
Cipango (sĭ păn′gō), or Japan, 321
Citizenship in Athens, 64
"City of God, The," of Augustine, 174
City-states, of Greece, 44; of Italy, 180
Cleopatra (clē ō pā′tra), 14
Clermont (clĕr′mŏnt), council of, 273
Clontarf (klŏn tärf′), battle of, 250
Clovis (klō′vĭs), 183
Colet (kŏl′ĕt), 305
Cologne (kō lōn′), 285
Colonization in America, Spanish, 343; Dutch, 349; English, 349; French, 350
Colosseum (kŏl o sē′ŭm), 142
Columba, Saint, 247
Columbanus (kŏl ŭm bā′nŭs), Saint, 248
Columbus, Christopher, life of, 323; discovers America, 324
Confucius (kŏn fū′shĭ ŭs), 318
Conrad of Franconia, 204
Constantine (kŏn′stan tīn) the Great, 158
Constantinople, founding of, 159
Constantius Chlorus (kŏn stăn′shĭ ŭs klō′rŭs), 158
Consuls, the Roman, 103
Copernicus (kō pûr′nĭ kŭs), 305
Cordova (kŏr′dō vä), 268, 271, 283
Corinth (kŏr′ĭnth), 44
Corinthian (kō rĭn′thĭ an), 63
Coronado (kŏr ō nä′dō), 340
Cortés (kōr tās′) conquers Mexico, 330
Crete (krēt), 43
Crœsus (krē′sŭs), 38
Crusades, the, 273; results of the, 279
Cumae (kū′mē), 78
Cuneiform (kū nē′ĭ form) writing, 31
Cuneus (kū′nē ŭs), 31
Curiatii (kū rĭ ā′shĭ ī), 102
Cyrene (sī rē′nē), 79
Cyrus (sī′rŭs) the Great, 36, 79

Da Gama (dä gä′mä) reaches India, 335
Damascus (da măs′kŭs), 265
Danelaw, the, 230

Daniel, the prophet, 39
Dante (dän′tē), 296, 303
Darius (dā rī′ŭs), 40, 79
David and Goliath (gō lī′ath), 22
Da Vinci (dä vĭn′chī), Leonardo, 304
De Leon (dā lā ōn′), Ponce, in Florida, 329
Delphi (dĕl′fī), oracle of, 48
Demarcation (dē mär kā′shŭn), line of, 336
Demeter (dē mē′tûr), or Ceres, 47
Democracy, in Greece, 44; at Athens, 62
Demosthenes (dē mŏs′thē nēz), 86
De Soto (dā sō′tō) reaches the Mississippi, 339
Detroit, 345
Diana (dī ăn′a), 47
Diaz (dē′äth), Bartholomew, 306, 323, 335
Dioceses (dī′ō sē sĕz), Roman, 162
Diogenes (dī ŏj′ē nēz), 89
Dionysus (dī ō nī′sŭs), 47; theater of, 68
Divine Comedy of Dante, 296
Dominic (dŏm′ĭ nĭk), Saint, 259
Donation of Pippin, 198
Donjon (dŭn′jŭn), 214
Doric (dŏr′ĭk), 63
Druids (drōō′ĭdz), 106
Duns Scotus (dŭnz skō′tŭs), 284

Edict of Toleration by Constantine, 159
Edward the Confessor, 232
Egyptians (ē jĭp′shanz), 5
Elis (ē′lĭs), 70
Elzevirs (ĕl′zē vûrz), 312
Erasmus (ē răz′mŭs), 305
Española (ĕs pän yō′lä), 326
Ethelbert (ĕth′ĕl bûrt), 201
Etruscans (ē trŭs′kanz), 100

Fairs, medieval, 290
Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain, 271
Feudal castle, life in a, 213, 214
Feudal system, 211
Florence, 302
Florida, discovery of, 329; ceded to England, 355
Forum (fō′rŭm), the Roman, 138
Fra Angelico (frä än jĕl′ē kō), 305
France in America, fall of, 354
Francis, Saint, of Assisi, 259
Franks, the, 183
Froben (frō′ben), 312
Fust (fōōst), 311

Galileo (găl ĭ lā′ō), 307
Gall, Saint, 248
Gaul, Cæsar in, 119
Gauls capture Rome, 106
Genevieve (jĕn ē vēv′), Saint, 176
Genoa (jĕn′ō a), 280
Geometry, 11
Germans, the early, southward march of, 163; life of, 164; religion of, 165
Gessler (gĕs′lûr), 208
Ghent (gĕnt), 285
Giotto (jŏt′tō), 304
Gladiators, 142
Godfrey of Bouillon, 275, 277
Goliath, 22
Good Hope, Cape of, 323
Gordian knot, 90
Gotama (gaw′ta ma), the Buddha, 94
Gothic architecture, 238
Goths, 168
Granada (gra nä′da), 268
Grand Khan (kän), 314

Granicus (gra nī′kŭs), battle of, 90
Greece, 43
Greek against Persian, 78
Greek architecture, 63
Greek arts, 63
Greek colonies, 78
Greek education, 59
Greek games, 70
Greek religion, 46
Greek theater, 67
Greek writers, 71
Gregorian calendar, 125
Gregory the Great, Pope, 181
Guilds (gĭldz), medieval, 289
Gutenberg (go͞o′ten bĕrk), 311
Gymnasium, the, in Greece, 51

Hades (hā′dēz), 59
Hadrian (hā′drĭ an), wall of, 120
Ham, 5
Hamburg, 286
Hamilcar (hă mĭl′kär), 112
Hammurabi (hăm o͞o rä′bē), 30
Hanging Gardens of Babylon, 34
Hannibal (hăn′ĭ bal), 112
Hanseatic (hăn sē ăt′ĭk) League, 286
Harold, King, 237
Hartford, 350
Haroun-al-Rashid (hä ro͞on′äl rä-shēd′), 194
Hasdrubal (hăz′dro͞o bal), 112
Hastings, battle of, 237
Havana, 354
Hawking, 228
Hebrews, the, 18
Hegira (hē jī′ra *or* hĕj′ĭ ra), 262
Helen of Troy, 71
Hengist (hĕn′gĭst) and Horsa (hor′-sa), 199
Henry, Prince, the Navigator, 322
Henry the Eighth, 346
Henry the Fowler, 204
Henry the Second, 239
Hephæstus (hē fĕs′tŭs), or Vulcan, 46
Hera (hē′rä), or Juno, 46
Heracles (hĕr′a klēz), 70
Heraclius (hĕr ā′klĭ ŭs), 263
Herculaneum (hûr kū lā′nē ŭm), 146
Hercules (hûr′kū lēz), 70
Hermann (hĕr′man), 128
Hermes (hûr′mēz), 47
Herod (hĕr′ŭd), King of Judea, 150
Herodotus (hē rŏd′ō tŭs), 27
Hesiod (hē′sĭ ŏd), 60
Hibernia (hī bûr′nĭ a), 243
Hieroglyphics (hī ûr ō glĭf′ĭks), 14
Holy Land, 272
Holy Roman Empire, 203
Homer (hō′mûr), 60, 71
Horace (hŏr′ās), 144
Horatii (hō rā′shĭ ī), 102
Horatius (hō rā′shĭ ŭs), 99
Horsa (hor′sä), 199
Hudson, 349
Huns, 168

Ictinus (ĭk tī′nŭs), 66
Iliad (ĭl′ĭ ad), 60, 71
Independence of United States acknowledged by England, 356
India, invasion of, by Alexander, 94
Iona (ī ō′na), 247
Ionic (ī ŏn′ĭk), 63
Ireland, conversion of, 245; schools of, 246; missionaries of, 247
Iroquois (ĭr ō kwoi′) Indians, 352
Isabella, Queen, 324
Isis (ī′sĭs), 8
Islam (ĭs′lăm), 262
Israel (ĭz′rā ĕl), Kingdom of, 23
Issus (ĭs′us), battle of, 91

Jacob (jā′kŭb), 18
Jamaica (ja mā′ka), 328
Jamestown, founding of, 349
Janus (jā′nŭs), 138
Japheth (jā′fĕth), 5
Jerome (jē rōm′), Saint, 255
Jerusalem (jē rōō′sa lĕm), capture of, by Nebuchadnezzar, 24; taken by the crusaders, 276
Jesus, Society of, 346
Jewish kingdoms, the, 22
John, king of England, 240
Joseph in Egypt, 18
Joshua, 21
Judah (jōō′da), the kings of, 22
Judea (jōō dē′a), 150
Jupiter (jōō′pĭ tûr), 46
Jury, trial by, 239
Justinian (jŭs tĭn′ĭ an), Emperor, era of, 186, 187; code of, 189
Jutes (jōōts), 199

Karnak (kär′năk), temples of, 7, 13
Kells, Book of, 246
Khan, Grand, 314
Khufu (kōō′fōō), 7
Knight, the, of chivalry, 224, 225
Koran (kō rän′), 261
Koster (kōs′tûr), Laurens, 311

Ladrone (lä drō′nā) Islands, the, 333
La Salle (lä säl′), 345
Latin language, 130; use of, 284
Latins, the, 99
Learning, revival of, 300
Lebanon mountains, 26
Leo, Pope, and Attila, 177
Leonardo da Vinci (lā ō när′dō dä-vēn′chē), 304
Leonidas (lē ŏn′ĭ das), 82
Lepidus (lĕp′ĭ dŭs), 125
Line of Demarcation, 336
Lisbon, 335
Livy (lĭv′ĭ), 144
Lombards, the, 180
Louisiana, 345
Loyola (loi ō′la), Saint Ignatius, 346
Lübeck, 286
Luther (lōō′thûr), 346
Luxor (lŭk′sor), 13
Lycurgus (lī kûr′gŭs), 50
Lydia (lĭd′ĭ a), 37
Lyon, 285

Macao (ma kä′ō), 336
Macedonians (măs ē dō′nĭ ans), 85
Magellan (ma jĕl′ăn), 333, 334
Magna Charta (măg′na kär′ta), 240
Manhattan Island, 350
Manuscripts, medieval, 311
Marathon (măr′a thŏn), battle of, 81
Marco Polo (mär′kō pō′lō), journey of, 316
Mardonius, defeat of, 84
Marduk (mär′dōōk), 31
Marius (mā′rĭ ŭs), 115
Mars, 47
Marseilles (mär sālz′), 79
Maryland, 349
Maxentius (măx ĕn′shĭ ŭs), 158
Mayor of the Palace, 184
Mecca (mĕk′a), 260
Medes (mēdz), 37
Medina (mā dē′nä), 262
Memphis (mĕm′fĭs), in Egypt, 7
Menelaus (mĕn ē lā′ŭs), 71
Menendez (mā nĕn′dāth), 343
Menes (mē′nēz), 7
Mercury, 47
Merovingians (mĕr ō vĭn′jĭ anz), the, 183

Metaurus (mē taw′rŭs), battle of the, 112
Michelangelo (mī kĕl ăn′jē lō), 304
Milan (mĭl′an), Edict of, 158
Miletus (mī lē′tŭs), 79
Miltiades (mĭl tī′a dēz), 81
Minerva (mĭ nûr′va), 46
Miracle plays, 297
Missals, illuminated, 254
Missionaries, 247, 248, 331
Mohammed (mō hăm′ĕd), 260
Mohammedans, success of, 263, 265; arts and sciences of, 266
Monasteries, life in the, 253
Monasticism, rise of, 251
Montcalm defeated at Quebec, 354
Monte Cassino (mon′tā käs sē′nō), 253
Montezuma (mŏn tē zo͞o′ma), 330
Montpelier, University of, 283
Montreal, 342
Moors, the, 267
More, Sir Thomas, 305
Moses (mō′zĕz), 20
Mount of Beatitudes, 152
Mount of Olives, 276
Mount Sinai (sī′nī), 20
Muezzin (mū ĕz′ĭn), 263
Mulvian Bridge, battle of, 159
Mummies, 12
Murillo (mo͞o rēl′yō), 305
Muses, 48
Mylæ (mī′lē), battle of, 111

Nazareth (năz′a rĕth), 151
Nebuchadnezzar (nĕb ū kad nĕz′ar), 24, 34
Necho (nē′kō), king, 27
Neptune, 47
Nero (nē′rō), Emperor, 154
New Amsterdam, 350
New Orleans, 345
Nicholas the Fifth, Pope, 283
Nile (nīl) River, 5
Nineveh (nĭn′ē vē), fall of, 33
Normandy, 236
Northmen, the, 229, 233, 234
Novgorod (nov′gō rōt), 234, 286

Obelisk (ŏb′ē lĭsk), 1
Octavius (ŏk tā′vĭ ŭs) Cæsar, 125
Odoacer (ō dō ā′sûr), 179
Odysseus (ō dĭs′ūs), 72
Odyssey (ŏd′ĭ sĭ), 60, 72
Oglethorpe, 349
Olympia (ō lĭm′pĭ a), 70
Olympiad (ō lĭm′pĭ ăd), 72
Olympic games, 70
Olympus (ō lĭm′pŭs), Mount, 43, 46, 47
Olynthus (ō lĭn′thŭs), capture of, 86
Oracle of Apollo, 38
Ordeal, 218
Orders of Greek architecture, 63
Orleans, University of, 283
Osiris (ō sī′rĭs), 5, 8
Ostracism (ŏs′tra sĭzm), 64
Ostrogoths (ŏs′trō gŏths), or East Goths, 169
Otto the Great, 205
Oxford, University of, 283, 284

Page, training of a, 224
Pantheon (păn′thē ŏn), Roman, 117
Paper, 309
Papyrus (pa pī′rŭs), 8, 308
Paris of Troy, 71
Paris, University of, 283; Treaty of (1783), 356
Parliament (pär′lĭ mĕnt), the English, 240

Parnassus (pär năs′sŭs), Mount, 48
Parthenon (pär′thē nŏn), 66
Patricians, the, 103
Patrick, Saint, 244, 245
Paul, Saint, the apostle, 67
Peace of God, 217
Pedagogue (pĕd′a gŏg), the Greek, 60
Peloponnesian (pĕl ō pō nē′shan) War, 85
Penelope (pē nĕl′ō pē), 72
Penn, William, 349
Pericles (pĕr′ĭ klēz), 74
Persecution of the Christians, 154
Persian Wars, 78
Persians, the, 36
Peter the Hermit, 274
Phalanx (fā′lănks), the Macedonian, 86
Pharaoh (fā′rō), the, 5
Pharsalus (fär sā′lŭs), battle of, 123
Pheidippides (fī dĭp′ĭ dēz), 81
Phidias (fĭd′ĭ as), 66
Philip Augustus of France, 278
Philip of Macedon, 76, 85
Philippine Islands discovered by Magellan, 333
Phœbus (fē′bŭs), or Apollo, 47
Phœnicians (fē nĭsh′anz), 26
Picts, the, 120
Pindar, 89
Pippin, 198
Pisa (pē′sä), 280
Pizarro (pē thär′rō) conquers Peru, 331
Plains of Abraham, battle of, 354
Plantin, 312
Platæa (plā tē′a), 84
Plato (plā′tō), 76
Plebeians (plē bē′yănz), 103
Pluto (ploō′tō), 47
Plymouth, Massachusetts, founding of, 349
Pnyx (nĭks), Hill, 64
Polo, Marco, 317
Polo brothers, the, 313
Polycarp (pŏl′ĭ kärp), Saint, 157
Pompeii (pŏm pā′yē), 146
Pompey (pŏm′pĭ), defeat of, 123
Ponce de León (pōn′thā dā lā ōn′), 329
Pontius Pilate (pŏn′shŭs pī′lat), 153
Popes, temporal power of, 198
Porto Rico, 327
Portuguese, the, 323
Poseidon (pō sī′don), or Neptune, 47
Printing, invention of, 310, 311
Prophets, Hebrew, 24
Ptolemy (tŏl′ē mĭ), 14
Punic (pū′nĭk), First, War, 109
Pyramids (pĭr′a mĭdz), 12
Pyrrhus (pĭr′ŭs), 108

Quebec, founding of, 344; fall of, 354

Ra (rä), 8
Ramses (răm′sēz) the Second, 8
Raphael (răph′ā ĕl), 305
Ravenna (rä vĕn′na), 173
Reformation, the, 346
Religion, of the Egyptians, 8; of the Babylonians, 31; of the Persians, 36; of the Greeks, 46
Rembrandt, 305
Renaissance (rĕn ĕ säns′), 300
Reuchlin (roik′lĭn), 305
Revival of Learning, 300
Revolution, the American, 356
Richard the Lion-hearted, 278, 279
Robert, the crusader, 275
Roderick the Visigoth, defeat of, 267

Roland, Song of, 194
Rollo, 235
Roman Empire of the East, 169
Roman Empire of the West, 168
Roman Republic, 102
Romanesque architecture, 292
Rome, against Carthage, 109; glory of, under Augustus, 128; houses, 131, 132; customs, 133; dress, 133; books, 130, 134; life, 135; theaters, 136; triumph, 139; religion, 141; aqueducts, 143; commerce, 143; army, 148
Rosetta Stone (rō zĕt′a), 14
Rubens, 305
Rubicon (rōō′bĭ kŏn), 122, 123
Runnymede (rŭn′ĭ mēd), 239
Russ, the, 234
Russia, 235

Saint Augustine, founding of, 343
Saint Louis, 345
Saint Paul in Athens, 67
Saint Peter's Church in Rome, 303
Saint Scholastica (skō lăs′tĭ ka), 253
Saladin (săl′ä dĭn), 278
Salamis (săl′a mĭs), battle of, 83
Samnites (săm′nīts), 107
Sancta Sophia (sănk′ta sō fē′a), 187
San Salvador (sän säl vä dōr′), 326
Saracens (săr′a senz), 278
Sardis (sär′dĭs), 79
Sargon (sär′gŏn) the First, 30
Saul (sawl), 22
Sault Sainte Marie (sōō sānt mā′rĭ), 345
Savior, birth of the, 150
Saxons, 200
Seljuk (sĕl jōōk′), 272
Sempach (zĕm′päk), battle of, 209
Senate, the Roman, 103
Sennacherib (sĕ năk′ûr ĭb), 32
Serfdom, 220, 221
Seville (sē vĭl′), 268, 271, 283
Shem, 5
Sidon (sī′dŏn), 26
Simon de Montfort (sī′mon de mŏnt′fōrt), 240
Sinai (sī′nī), 20
Slavery in Greece, 65
Smyrna, 79
Socrates (sŏk′ra tēz), 74
Solomon, 22
Solon (sō′lŏn), 38
Spain, invasion of, by the Visigoths, 174; conquest of, by the Moors, 268
Sparta (spär′ta), life in, 50
Sphinx (sfĭnks), 13
Squire, training of a, 224
Stilicho (stĭl′ĭ kō), 173
Styx (stĭks) River, 59
Syracuse, 79

Tarquin (tär′kwĭn), last Roman king, 102
Tell, William, 207, 208
Temples of Egypt, 13
Ten Commandments, the, 20
Ten Thousand Greeks, expedition of, 41
Teutons, defeat of, 163
Thebes (thēbz) in Egypt, 8; in Greece, 44, 85
Themistocles (thē mĭs′tō klēz), 83
Theodore of Tarsus, 201
Theodoric (thē ŏd′ō rĭk), 179, 180
Theodosius (thē ō dō′shĭ ŭs) the Great, 169
Thermopylæ (thĕr mŏp′ĭ lē), battle of, 82
Thessalonica (thĕs a lō nī′ka), 169

Thor (thôr), 166
Thutmose (thŭt mō′sē) the Third, 7
Titian (tĭsh′an), 305
Toledo (tō lē′dō), University of, 283
Tombs, Egyptian rock, 13
Tournament, 226
Tours, battle of, 269
Towns, life in medieval, 287; growth of, in medieval times, 285
Tradition, 16
Trial by combat, 219
Triumph, Roman, 139
Trojan War, 71
Truce of God, 217
Tutankhamen (tōōt ănk ä′men), 13
Twelve Tables, laws of the, 104
Tyre (tīr), 26

Ulysses (ū lĭs′ēz), 72
Universities, rise of medieval, 283
Urban, Pope, the Second, 273

Valhalla (văl hăl′a), 167
Valkyrie (văl kĭr′ĭ), 167
Vandals, in Africa, 175; sack of Rome by, 178; defeated by Justinian, 189
Van Dyck (dīk), 305
Varus (vā′rŭs), defeat of, 127, 128
Vatican library, 283
Velasquez (vā läs′kāth), 305
Vellum, 309
Venice, 177
Venus, 46
Vercingetorix (vûr sĭn jĕt′ō rĭks), 119
Verdun (vĕr dŭn′), 210
Vergil (vûr′jĭl), 144
Verrazano (vĕr rät sä′nō), 342
Vespucius (vĕs pōō′shŭs), 337
Vestal Virgins, 141
Vesuvius (vē sū′vĭ ŭs), eruption of, 146
Veto, 103
Villein (vĭl′ĭn), 219
Visigoths (vĭz′ĭ gŏths), or West Goths, 168
Vulcan, 46

Waldseemüller (vält′zā mĭl ûr), 337
Wall of Hadrian, 120
Walter the Penniless, 275
War between Athens and Sparta, 85
Wars of religion, 346
William the Conqueror, 237
Winkelried (vĭn′kel rēt), Arnold von, 209
Woden (wō′den), 166, 167
Wolfe captures Quebec, 353, 354

Xenophon (zĕn′ō fŏn), 41
Xerxes (zûrk′sēz), 82

Yorktown, battle of, 356

Zama (zā′ma), battle of, 113
Zeus (zūs), 46
Zoroaster (zō rō ăs′tûr), 36

1929. 208

Boston Public Library
Central Library, Copley Square

Division of
Reference and Research Services

The Date Due Card in the pocket indicates the date on or before which this book should be returned to the Library.

Please do not remove cards from this pocket.